

VALENTINE AND ORSON,

The Two Sons of the Emperour of
GREECE.

Newly Corrected and Amended, with new Pictures,
Likely expressing the HISTORY.



London, Printed by G. Paslow, for Tho. Paslow, who
are to be sold at his Shop, at the Sign of the
three Bibles on London-Bridge. 1771.

LENTINE

1864. Feb 11

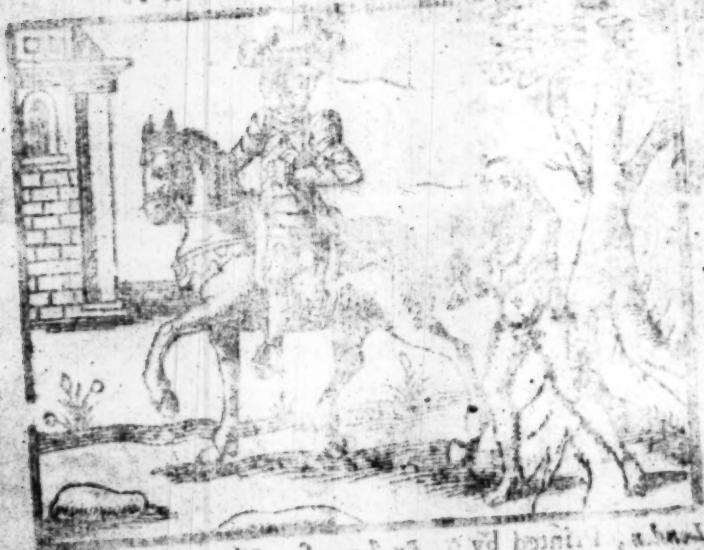
27283.48 4/4

James Orchard Halliday

London.

The way out of the prison of

THE HISTORY OF THE



London, printed by W. L. G. for the Author, and
are sold at his shop, at the sign of the
three lions on London-bridge, 1864.

THE
HISTORY
OF
Valentine & Orson.

CHAP. I.

How King *Pepin* banished his Queen *Bertha*, And how he gave his Sister *Bellysant* in Marriage to *Alexander* Emperour of *Constantinople*.



WE find it credibly set down in ancient Chronicles, that the thrice Noble and Valiant *Pepin*, sometimes a King of France, took to Wife one *Bertha*, who was descended of no less then Royal race; This Lady was exceeding fair and wise, but wondrously cumbered with many adberities and troubles, embroiled beset on every side: which, with great patience she always suffered.

The chief Instrument of all this treacherous mischief toward this good Queen, was plotted and effected by a false and cursed old woman, who first of all brought her in disgrace with the King her Husband, and after to be quite banished his Bed, whilst she in cunning manner brought in a Daughter of her own unto the Kings Bed, instead of his good Queen *Bertha*; This old woman having thus brought her Treachery to effect (for her Daughter somewhat resembled *Bertha*) it so came to pass, that King *Pepin* had two Sons by this Maiden, to wit, *Haufrey* and *Henry*, both which Sons so grieved the King, and so wasted the Country of France by their outrages and fury, that in the end they caused the

Queen Bertha to be utterly banished, where she passed a great part of her days in doleful lamentation, and abundance of sorrow. She long endured these miserable days of sorrow, at the last began to receive comfort again: for it so chanced after, at the earnest suit and request of others great Peers and Lords of France, that this good Queen began to find favour again with King Pepin her Husband (who when he knew the Treachery that the wicked old woman had plotted against her) much bewailed the miseries she had endured, and with great Honour and Triumph received her again most kindly. The Queen being thus restored to her former bed, in short time conceived and bare unto the King a goodly Son, called Charlemain the Pious: but the King himself was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforesaid Haufrey and Henry, and at the last by them compelled to forsake his Realm, as hereafter followeth more at large in the ensuing History. My purpose now at this present is, to set down unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Book: and especially, the valiant acts and deeds of Valentine and his brother Orson.

This King Pepin, had a Sister named Belysant, a woman of great wit, beauty, and all the endowments that Nature might afford, which caused her Brother Pepins love mightily to appear to all the world, in the ardent love and affection that he bare towards her. It chanced so, that the fame of this lovely personage spread it self so abroad in other Regions, that at last, King Alexander, Emperour of Constantinople, who was much inflamed with her beauty, came into France, accompanied with a gallant Troop of his Nobility, all richly set out with all manner of Pomp belonging to so great a personage.

This Emperour, shortly after his arrival, suddenly assembled all his Lords in their rich habiliments, appointing them to take their way towards King Pepins Court, to declare unto him the cause of his coming, which was to enjoy his fair sister Belysant in Marriage. The Nobles, according to his command, came unto King Pepin, declaring unto him the cause of their Emperours coming into his Country: which when King Pepin understood, he joyfully entertained them, and granted quickly the Emperours request.

Right dear and Soberaign Lady (quoth he) I am your Ser-
vant and Chaplain; therefore I beseech you not to stop your ears,
but rather set them wide open to hear my rude words, especially
for that I am burnt up in affection towards your fair person, and
for whose love I have suffered intollerable torments in my fiery
bolome. Know therefore (my redoubted Lady) that the beauty
of your admirable person, and the supernatural form wherein you
are framed and composed, hath even ravished my Spirits, broken
my heart, split my whole senses in sunder, and quite bereft me of
all rest both by night and day, and onely with doting upon your
peerles beauty. Again (fair Lady) my Heart, Drink, Wanners,
yea, and my very Countenance, they all plead at the Bar of your
fair face, and resplendent Countenance; Insemuch, that onely
my request and prayers unto the Gods, is even this, that they
would so inchant that heart of yours, that you would at length
give consent unto me your vassal, that I might not onely serve
you, but also delight you in all those pleasures you are ordained
unto. If, Lady, you refuse me, and cast me off, denying
these my uncrentled thoughts (than to which nothing will longer cut
my heart in sunder) I can look for nothing but present Death,
and rather covet therein to be locked fast, as in a Prison, than
receive a denial from these your fair lips. Alas! (fair Lady) you
are renowned in all the gifts of Nature: Fair, Inimitable, Con-
tious, Gentle, and also Pious, be not then the cause that I
should determine my life by losing your love, but rather grant
what I desire, and thereby make me for ever yours in hearty af-
fection. But, Lady, happily you will urge, how dare you to offend
the Gods in this unlawful act? To this fair Lady I answer, I
am one of the Vicars of the Gods upon earth, and therefore it
wholly rests in my power, to absolve you from your sins, and in-
joy you penance, which trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but
very easie, so you grant me love.

These speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto out of
a grave & prudent carriage, made unto this person's Priest this
excellent reprehension and answer. Ah, thou false, unjust, disloyal,
and Devilish Priest, stain to all thy Profession; How dar'st
thou once open thy Perjured mouth to such a mass of villanies as
there

thereon may ensue? First, as I said against the sacred order; secondly, but most principally against the Majesty of that Emperour, that hath ever nourished thee in the bond of tender compassion and love, and hath raised thee to great Dignities far unfit for such a devil incarnate: And from whom may justly proceed the sentence of condemnation, both on thee and me, if he should but understand thy lascivious and wicked practises. Thou (I say, Devil, and worse than Devil) thou that shouldest be unto me instruction, and also a guide to my life and conversation, in this thou goest about my utter ruine and destruction, by thy evil conditions, even beyond that good expectation which the Emperour trusteth to be in thee, O never grant (O ye Gods) that the blood of France, from whence I am descended, nor the Emperour my loving Lord, should be so dishonoured, either by me in my body, or through my priuity in any other manner. O false accursed man, behold whereunto thou wouldest deliver me: first, unto the utter ruine and spoil of mine honor: next, shut up my body in unremovable shame for ever, amongst men; and lastly, bring my soul into the jaws of Death and the Devil. Let fall, I say, all these thy vile and devilish provocations to lust, and leave for ever hereafter to sollicite me, or any other vertuous creature on this manner, which if thou further prosecute unto me, then canst thou look for nothing but a shameful downfal, & a most damnable death. Therefore with this answer depart, and see that ye attempt me no more.

This angry farewell of the worthy Emperess, stung the Priest at the very heart, but at that time he durst make no further Reply unto the fair Lady concerning love, but as a man all composed of rage and great fury, he then departed, discontent at this his most unfortunate and unhappy chance. At the last, when he could no longer hold, he excused himself unto the Lady, craving pardon for these his bold, saucy, and rash follies committed, but yet could find no remedy to restore his honor. Thus being sore troubled in mind divers and sundry waies, he resolved what to do upon revenge against this innocent, which he accordingly effected by Treason against the Lady. And seeing the Emperour knew nothing in this matter from the Emperess Belysant, how the Arch-Priest would have inticed her to dishonor, and would have drawn
her

her to disloyalty to the Emperoz: but he could not, therefore he began to accuse her unto the Emperoz for divers crimes, as hereafter more at large followeth to be spoken in this next ensuing Chapter.



CHAP. III.

How the Arch Priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Belysant*, to save his own honour, practised Treason against the innocent Lady.

The Arch-Priest having now begun to set abreach his Devilish practises, began to bethink him how he might effect what he had determined, and also preserve the reputation of his former Honours which the Emperoz had bestowed upon him: whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly under the cloak of dissimulation bear fair weather towards the Emperoz, as also seemed to shew how great care he had of his preservation, and to make known his Loyalty and watchful care that he ever had towards the welfare of his Estate & Person. So it befel, that on a day when he espied a fit opportunity, and taking the Emperoz all alone, he began to break with him on this manner, as followeth:

Right High and Mighty Emperoz, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chuse but recount and highly esteem of the many and innumerable favours, and great kindness which I have always received from your Mighty Highness: wherefore as duty doth always bind me, I am ever most watchful over the passages of your estate, in which I now stand by you appointed; But especially in that you have made me sole Commander in your House, and therein trusted me above all other: therefore it is my duty, to bewray unto you all those carriages that may way concern your High and Mighty Person, wherefore I beseech your Highness to give ear to that which I shall now disclose: ne-

to you, for I had rather suffer all the torments of death, than for to hide any thing from you: and the rather, for that it nearly toucheth your person, profit and honor. O Emperor thus it is, Bellysant your Wife, and Sister to the King of France, she whom you have advanced to this state and dignity, faileth in the duty and loyalty which she oweth unto her dread Lord: for she wandreth in her love, giveth it unto another, which is proper only to your self. To name the person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a sacred Priest, and may not seek the blood of any man; but yet know for certain, that by the way of confession I came unto the light thereof, whereof I neither ought nor will betray the name of him that thus usurps your Bed; but let it suffice, there is not a more unclean and lascivious woman liveth in your Court or Kingdom, whereby your life is in danger, your honour defamed, and my duty towards you approb'd by what I have told you. My advice therefore is, to be wary of your person, and correct this her folly, but yet mildly and wisely, always with the preservation of your Honor. For will it not be a great shame among the Princes of the earth, that you, having taken a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her beauty is incomparable, her nobleness and Wisdom not to be outshined by any earthly Lady, and she to prove a Whore? and what worse is, one who daily desireth your death, which grieves my heart to think upon.

The Emperor having heard this long Accusation, little mistrusted the treachery of this Arch-Priest, but gave credit to all his fair, but false words; and therewithal became extream pen-sive and sad, that his trust in her beauteous Love, had been thus deceived. At last, having many days in many places uttered forth many discontented gestures, words, and sighs, and many grievous acclamations, even in the Imperial Palace, he gave rest a while unto his discontented Passions; but wakened Revenge to wait upon fitter opportunity. And upon a day entering into the Chamber of his fair Lady Bellysant, without speaking any word to her at all, in most fierce, rude, and unmanly order, took his Lady by the head, and pulling her by the hair, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the ground in such horrid manner, that the blood befmeared all her face in
most

most inhumane sort. The Lady receiving from her Lord such unlookt for welcome, cried out in lamentable manner, and as well as she was able, began to say; *Alas* (my dear Lord) what woe beeth you to this unwelcome out-rage? I call all the Gods to witness, I never did any thing in my life, either against your honour or life, or ever prostituted my body to any Strangers love. The Emperour not being thus satisfied, replied, saying; *Thou Whore*, I am too well informed of thy proceedings, and cursed be the day and hour that ever I saw thy deceivable face, and therewithal, without all pity dashed her head against the ground, leaving her speechless, in so much that all the Damofels her attendants, thought she had been quite bereft of life. Upon this, there arose up in the Court a most pitiful out-cry, which the Counsellors and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance; at which disaster all amazed, some ran to take up the dead body of the Emperess, others took upon them to speak unto the Emperour, thinking thereby to stay the fury of this undeserved rage, whose words unto him were as followeth.

Alas (Great Sovereign) what may be the cause of this your sudden passion in delibering unto danger of death, this so modest, chaste and noble a Lady? A Lady so beloved of all degrees, and in whom was never seen the least spark of dishonour, neither co-wares you nor any within this Empire; wherefore our request unto you is, that you would moderate your wrong conceived anger against this harmles Lady. The Emperour nothing for all this relenting, answered, *Speak no more*, for I know, I see, I hear, how cunningly she hath deluded me; therefore move me no further, for I am fully purposed to deliver her over to death, and he or they who shall hereunto gain-say. I shall make him partaker (in death) with this wicked and disloyal Strumpet.

These words were no sooner uttered, but up arose a worthy, wife, and courageous bold Baron, and spake unto the Emperour after this manner; Right worthy Sir, I could wish you to be well advised before you proceed further against this Lady, who is your espoused wife, sister to a great king, namely *Pepin King of France*, who when he shall hear of this wrong done to her, will out of a

courageous heart and a brotherly affection, muster up all his men of War, and suddenly surprize our Towns, Houses, Wives, and Children, forgetting Mercy, and onely pursuing Revenge upon us, for these Merciless and cruel Deeds unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other side, that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous so rudely to smite and wound her on this manner, wherein you have proceeded against her. The worthy Baron having thus ended his advice, the Lady suddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperour, and in tears very submissively and lamentably, thus she spake :

Alas (my Lord) take pity on an innocent Lady, for I am so free from any evil act, as I never so much as thought any evil against your person, or dignity : at least, my Lord, if your compassion be quite distinct from pitying me, yet pity the fruit of my body, for I am great with child by you, of which the Gods grant me a joyful delivery. If nothing can appease your anger towards me, then let my body be imprisoned in some strong Tower, till the time of my delivery, and then do with my body what pleaseth you, so the fruit of my body may be kept safe. In this dolorous passion she proceeded so far, that what with her sighs and tears following one the other, it would have grieved the stoniest heart that ever rested in the bosome of the vilest Tyrant that ever reigned.

All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperour, who was so wholly bewitched with the false and traiterous accusation of the Arch-Priest, that all lenity set apart, he burst out in this manner : Thou false Strumpet, the Child thou goest withal is to me no joy, but rather great dishonour, for thy behaviour and thy disloyalty hath made such a separation between us, that nothing thy dissolute life, thou hast made another partner in my love : The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the rage of the Emperour, by a common consent removed her out of his presence into another Chamber, shewing unto her all the favour they could both in action and gesture, although her fair face was sore deformed and besmeared with blood. Having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies & were Attendants, fetched water to wash her face, and did all they could, to revive her ever-dying Spirits.

Being.

Being thus in another chamber, in comes Blandiman her Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured manner, for very pity the water trickled down his cheeks, & at the last he began his speech in this manner.

Ah Madam, I plainly see that you are traiterously handled, and wish that the Gods would throw down their malignant curses upon that person that hath thus purchased your extreme miseries; But gentle Lady, take comfort unto you, and trust me, if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you back again into France toward your Brother King Pepin, who gave me and my service unto you, to attend you in all these misfortunes, all which I will to the utmost of my power undertake. Sweet Lady, follow my counsel and free your self out of danger, for be you assured, that if here you stay, the Emperour will prosecute revenge upon you, and in the end bring you unto a shameful death.

Unto this the sorrowful Lady made this reply, Ah Blandiman, I know thy faithful service towards me, but yet, if I should follow thy advice, & steal out of this Country secretly, it would argue me guilty of all that infamy the Emperour throweth upon me, and thereby would make me guilty of the deed: Believe me Servant, I had rather dye all the deaths the world can lay upon me, rather than to bear the blame of that wherein I am innocent.

By this time the Emperours Choller was somewhat pacified, by means of his Lords and Barons that attended, insomuch that he caused Belysant to be quickly brought before him. When she was come, his heart trembled and fretted, for very anger, that he durst not put her to death, fearing the puissance and might of her Brother King Pepin, and therefore brast out into these speeches: Thou false and accursed woman, by whom mine Honour is brought in question: I take the Gods to witness, were it not for thy Brothers sake, the valiant Pepin King of France, I would make thee fry in the fire, as an example to all faire Ladies; but for his sake I spare thy life, stand forth and hear thy Judgement. I banish thee out of my Country and Empire, expressly commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou shalt ever be seen here any more, I assure thee thou shalt suffer death in all extremity. Also, I straightly,

straightly commanded that none of my Country dare be once so
 hardy, as to give aid, or accompany you, save onely your servant
 Blandiman, whom you brought with you out of France. So, get
 thee presently out of my sight, for thou shalt never more sleep in
 my bosome. The Emperour having pronounced sentence against
 her, the Emperess Belysant, accompanied with her servant Blan-
 diman, speedily hasted to horse. Being thus mounted, and then
 passing through this fair City towards one of the gates thereof,
 there met her people in great multitudes, of all degrees, much
 lamenting the loss of so fair a Lady, and so lovely an Emperess.
 When she came to the utmost part, even ready to go out of the
 gates of the City, there was heard such a lamentable howling
 of mournful voices, that the like was never heard in the City
 of Constantinople. When she was out of the walls of the City,
 and but newly entered into the wide fields, she began to fall in-
 to a womanly fit of bitter weeping, to see how shamefully and dis-
 honourably she was handled, causeless. Again, to think upon her
 birth, and the Imperial dignity from whence she was fallen, as
 also to recount the misfortune wherein she was like to finish the
 rest of her days, it drove her at last from tears, to utter her griefs
 in these words, Alas, in what unhappy hour was I born, to fall
 from so high estate, to be so low an object of poverty as I am now
 in! Alas, is me, the unhappiest among women; now are all my
 joys turned topsy turvy, my laughter is turned into weeping,
 my songs converted into sighs; instead of cloath of Gold, where-
 with I was wont to be clothed, now I am glad of all manner
 of mean attire; my precious stones of inestimable value, are
 all taken from me, and Pearls of Tears stand over all my
 garments. O you fields and woods, to you I make my moan,
 for other company I have none; consider my exile, and help
 to bewail my misfortune. O would the Gods had pittied my
 distress, and made me the poorest among Creatures, then had
 not fortune given me so foul a fall, at least my poor estate
 would never have grieved me. Wherefore doth the beauteous
 Sun scorch with his beams upon a wretch so miserable? Why
 doth the earth bear such a Creature, that is all composed of mis-
 eries? It is not possible for my Tongue to tell out my heaviness
 so low,

forrow, O wretched man (whatsoever thou art) that by thy wicked treason hath brought me to this downfall, I may well curse thee with bitterness of heart, for by thee only am I made thus unfortunate. Ah, my Brother, what shouldst thou do with such a woful weight to thy Sister? It had been better I had never been born, than that I should picke such a stain to thy Kingly house. As she was thus complaining to her secret heart, the anguish thereof struck her into a swoond, as she sat on horse-back, and was ready at that instant to have fallen off her horse, ere her servant could alight and recover her, but he used all the speediest means for her recovery, at last she coming unto her self again, he said unto her: Alas Madam, be not so discomfited, neither let despair so far seize upon you, but trust ye that the Gods will keep and defend you, for they are ready to aid and assist the innocent. Having thus spoken, he suddenly spied a fountain, towards the which he and his Lady took their way, and being come near thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her long overtyred senses. Here at this spring leaue we the Lady and her Squire, and turn we now to the traiterous Arch-Priest who was the cause of all these treacherous and evil practises.



C A A P. IV.

How the Arch-Priest put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress
Bellysant, who was lately Banished.

The Arch Priest having now wrought the banishment of fair *Bellysant*, thought with himself now he should surely accomplish his desire; wherefore in all haste he changed his white Rochet into a Coat of Steel, and begirt unto his side a sword, and being thus accoutred, he suddenly was mounted upon a Milk-white Steed, the fairest that could be had in all Constantinople. Being thus mounted, he made after with all expedition, inquiring of all he met, which way the Lady *Bellysant*

was taken, who gladly told him which way she lately passed. After some few hours Riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest, and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady: It chanced that as he was riding forward, casting his eye aside, he presently espied the Lady with her servant Blandiman, sitting by a fountain, but suddenly withdrew himself, and coming nearer found the Lady sitting by the same, full of heaviness, lamenting her miserable fortunes, and by her sat her trusty servant comforting her.

This false Priest, from forth his Beaver, well perceived it to be the Lady, but by reason of his disguise, he could not imagine him to be the Arch-Priest, her Enemy; but coming nearer her, she soon discerned him, and being struck with a sudden fear, spake thus to her Servant: Alas (quoth she) I well perceive this to be the false Arch-Priest, that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearful, lest he be come to do me further villany. Lady (quoth Blandiman) banish fear, for if he come after us to do you further harm, I will encounter him body for body, even as long as life lasteth. By this time that they had ended their speech each to other, the Arch-Priest was ready to alight from his Horse, to salute the Lady in all courteous behaviour: and after he had made himself known unto her, he began to say unto her after this manner:

Right dear Lady, and our late honored Empress, sith thy case is so pitiful, as to suffer banishment by Sentence given against thee by the Emperour, so it is, that if thou wilt give me entertainment in thy Love, accept me into thy favour, and to grant what I have long sought at thy hands, I will bring it to pass, that the Emperour shall again recall thy banishment, and make thy greatness of State, shine more bright then ever before: therefore advise you well, for I protest what I offer to you, is only tending to your good and advancement. Ha (quoth the Lady) thou dishonest and traiterous adversary, I have no great cause to bestow love where my life hath been put in jeopardy. It is onely thou that hast brought my overthrow, & thou it is, that makest me to spend the remnant of my days in more misery then ever Lady is able to endure. Lady (quoth he) utter not forth such curses against me

me, for I am come not to you to vex or trouble you, but to heape up
 in you more ioyes than ever you as yet in all your life enjoyed, and
 in speaking these words, he bended his body to the Lady, thinking
 to have kissed her, but Blandiman perceiving his intent, suddenly
 started between them, and gave the Arch-Priest so mighty a stroke
 y^e he felled him to the earth, & with the violence of the blow, brake
 out one of his teeth. The Arch-Priest had no sooner recovered him-
 self from the ground, but suddenly detook him to his sword, which
 Blandiman perceiving, detook him to a Glave which he had about
 him, whereupon grew a sore and dangerous fight between them.

This incounter lasted so long that they were both wounded, but
 still they continued fighting, till at length it chanced, a Merchant
 came that way, who perceiving a far off their fierce encounter,
 cryed out with a loud voice, in this manner: Lords, Lords, quoth
 he, leave off, and shew the cause of this your variance, and I will
 do my best to end this controverisie. Sir, (quoth Blandiman) let
 us first try our right by our weapons, and afterwards we will be
 ruled by words. But the poor Lady could no longer bear silence,
 but began to tell the Merchant as followeth: Alas (quoth she)
 as you ever pittied tooman, pittie my case: for this man, whom
 here you see armed, is the false & traiterous Arch-Priest, that hath
 followed me to rob me of my Honour, and force me to his wicked
 and unsatiare Lust: Also, this is he that hath made a separati-
 on between me and the Emperor my Lord and Husband.
 The Merchant hearing her lamentable tale, pittied her miserie,
 and began thus unto the Arch-Priest, Sir Priest, leave off your
 enterprize, and dare not so much as to touch this innocent Lady;
 for if the Emperor did but understand this villany, he would scan-
 end thy life in infamy, as thou wilt deserve. As soon as the Arch-
 Priest had heard his speech, he forsook his combat, and fled as fast
 as he could through the wood, for fear of being further known,
 being prevented of his purpose toward the Lady: though he contri-
 ved his body out of sight, yet his villanies were afterwards disco-
 vered. After his departure the Lady was faine to stay still in the wood
 all sorrowful with her wounded servant. The Merchant said much
 of her some little time, by wailing the hard hap of the Lady, yet
 continued her saying: Alas Lady, I see that this Arch-Priest hath
 falsly betrayed you, and brought you in hatred with the Empe-

ro; but I will promise you, that if I live I will bewray all these Treacheries to the Emperoz; and bying the Traitor to a shameful death. And so taking leave, I commend you to the Gods, wishing that in these extremities you would be patient, and comfort your self in these your sorrows: so with many thanks for his aid from Blandiman, the Merchant departed.

The Merchant having left them, Blandiman set the Lady upon her horse, and himself on his, so riding on together they came unto a lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight days; during which time, her servant was recovered of his wounds, and then forward towards France, the Lady still sorrowful and complaining in this manner. Alas Blandiman, what may my Brother and the Peers of France think of this, when they shall understand that I am expelled Greece for such a dishonorable deed, as a common varlet banished from the Emperoz of Constantinople? Alas! I am persuaded that the King my Brother will easily entertain it, that I am guilty of the deed, and in his anger care not to deliberate over to death. Lady (quoth he) be not thus discouraged, but trust in the Gods, who will revenge your injury, and pay it home upon the offenders head. During the time of these discourses, they had passed divers Countries and Regions, till at last they came into France, and passing by Orleance, they took their way towards Paris, where King Pepin was accustomed to sojourn. So entering into a Forrest near unto Orleance, there happened new miseries unto this Emperess, of which more hereafter ensueth.



CHAP. V.

Now *Belysant* in her Banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood; whose Names were *Valentine* and *Orson*, and how she lost them.

Belysant (as before you heard) being with Child, was suddenly overtaken in the Forrest. The time of her delivery being come, caused her to forsake her Horse, and begin to complain to her servant, on this manner. Alas (quoth she) help, help, I say,

to lay me down softly under yonder great Tree, and when I am laid, make haste and find me help of women: wheresoeuer they can get any, for I can go no further my pains so much increase in multitudes upon me.

Blandiman her servant did as she commanded, and for that he knew not how to find the same place again, he set a special mark, that he might the readier come thither again: and so betaking him to horse, he rode forth swiftly to seek some woman to help this distressed Lady.

He being gone, the Lady was left comfortless all alone, without succour of any creature, so that at last she was delivered of two faire Sons, in the Desolate Forrest. These Children were no sooner come into the world, but a fresh misery worse than all the



rest that she had endured happened to this Lady, for as she lay upon the earth under the Tree, and her two Infants by her, suddenly came to her a huge Bear, most horrible to behold, and took up one of the Infants in her mouth, and with great pace hasted into the thickest of the Forrest. This strange and unlockt for accident, frighted the distressed Lady to the soul, that she cryed out most lamentably, getting up upon her hands and feet, to hasten after the aforesaid Bear, which was quickly got out of her sight. But alas! it little abailed her to make any further pursuit, for she never came into the sight of her child, till by miracle it was at length disclosed. So long wound this Lady up and down, and from place to place, weeping and crying out for her child, that being over-wearied with travel, she fell into a great sickness, insomuch, that at the last she was thereby near deprived of her life: so that at the last she fell into a swoond upon the cold earth, as if she had peiled up the Ghost. In this extasie, leaue we her, and now proceed to the other Child, which she left under the Tree.

It happened the same day that her Brother King Pepin had taken his journey from Paris (accompanied with diuers great Lords and Barons) towards Constantinople, to visit his Sister Belysant, and striking through Orleance, he made such haste, that he entered into the same Forrest whereas his banished Sister was lately delivered of her two Children, but knowing nothing what had happened. Now as the King passed through this Forrest, he spied lying under a Tree alone, the other Son of Belysant, which when he saw, he said unto his Attendants: My Lords, by the appointment of the Gods, see I have here found a fair incounter, even a Child. By the Gods (said the Lords) you say truth. Why, said the King, take it up, and it shall be brought up at my charge so long as it lieth, and it shall want no manner of attendance, but be used as it were mine own. For if it liues until it comes to mans estate, I will endow it with Lands and Possessions after the noblest manner: and therewithal, calling unto him one of his Squires, gave him the whole charge thereof, saying to him on this manner: Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to Orleance, see it Baptized, provide a good Nurse for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto: the King little suspecting that this Child was his Nephew.

The

The Esquire did as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to Orleance, caused it to be baptized, and gave it his own name, called Valentine. After, he sought out a Nurle for the Child, and gave it great attendance, according to the Kings command. This done, the King proceeded on his journey toward Constantinople, to see his lovely and beaurtous Sister Bellysant, but ere he could pass through the Forrest, he chanced to meet with Blandiman, accompanied with a woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greatest extremity of Child-birth. Blandiman spying the King, knew him, and suddenly alighted from his Horse, doing his duty unto him. The King perceiving it to be Blandiman, asked what good news from Constantinople, and what the rest, how both our Sister Bellysant? Blandiman answered: Most gracious Sovereign, I bring you but little tidings, yet these I bring, are bitter and sharp: For (amongst the rest) I must tell you strange news of your loving Sister, and how she fares: Wherefore so it is, That by force of Treason, and false suggestion of the cursed Arch-Priest of Constantinople, your Sister is banished out of the Emperours Court, and Dominion, and but for the great mercy of the Lords of the Emperours Court, and others, she had been publickly put to death, and burnt to ashes, in the sight of all the people.

King Pepin having heard the lamentable relation of Blandimans report, being exceeding outrageous and fierce in anger (and yet sorrowful withal) brake out in speech, most bitterly against her, on this manner: Now, by the Gods, quoth he, I hold the Emperour no upright Judge, in that he spared the life of my Sister: for I swear, that if I had her here now in my possession, I would not rest till by death I had made her an example unto all false Ladies while the world endureth: and therewithal, commanded all his train of Lords, and others to stay their journey of going forward, and make their return back again to Paris, for the grievous offences of my Sister here stales my journey, and so he departed, without further asking any more questions, but turning his horses head, sorrow overcame his courage, and at last made him break forth into these words: Ha (quoth he) how many men are deceived in Women? Now am I utterly prebent of all my purposes.

purposes, for my onely hope rested in the modesty of my Sister Bellysant, yea, and in her stood all my joys and pleasure. Again, to have had the Emperour Alexander still my Brother, and fast friend at all affaires, and in all my necessities, was my onely hope and joy of heart, and now behold by her I am disappointed, defamed, and shut out into eternal dishonour. And so in that distressed and melancholly, King Pepin returned again towards Orleans. When Blandiman perceived the courage of the King to be thus daunted, he durst relate no further news of his Lady Bellysant, but leaving the King, took his way towards the Tree, where he lately left her in great pain of Child-birth: being come thither, he sought her every where, but could hear no tidings of her: wherefore being sorrowful, he knew not what way to take.

Being in this estate, at last he tyed up his horse to a thorn-tree, and began again to make a narrower search than before, where in he was so vigilant, that anon he espied her, finding her flat upon the earth in a manner speechless, for very grief of heart that she had lost her Child, which the Bear had violently bore away from her. Blandiman being glad, that now at last he had found her, kindly embraced her, and taking her up in his arms from the cold earth, set her upon her feet, and began thus unto her: Alas (dear Lady and Mistresse) how happened you to stray thus far from the place I left you in?

The Lady looking upon him with a ghastly countenance, replied thus: Oh Blandiman! my dolours and distresses daily increase upon me: for thou wert no sooner departed, to get me the help of some woman-kind, but I being delivered of two Babes, a Ravenous Bear from forth the Forrest assailed me, and bare away one of them. I, although weak, making what poor shift I was able, followed that ravenous Beast, thinking by strong hand to have recovered again my loss; but all in vain, I could not overtake the Bear, nor wanting my strength, recover back again to the Tree where I left my other Infant. Lady (quoth he) the other Infant? why I my self but lately came from the Tree, and I am well assured that there lay no Infant there, nor near therabouts. How (quoth the Lady) no Child under the tree? With these words she was so inwardly wounded, that she fell down in

a swoond, which Blandiman spying, sad her (in what he could) and fell into brinish tears for grief and sorrow, to see his Lady so extremely plunged and overwhelmed, and at last led her towards the tree, where she had left her Child, but when she saw that other Child also gone, think then what dolour of heart the poor Lady endured: in the midst of all which sorrows, she thus bespake:

Alas (quoth she) can there be in the world a more desolate wretch, on every side compassed with grief, yea, and all insupportable sorrows? but alas Emperour, thou art the cause, and hast been the onely means even to deliver me even to death, and that wrongfully without cause on my part, and onely by deserveable counsel hast thou bereft me of thy company: But here I call all the Gods to witness, that I was never faulty to thee in my body, nor disobedient unto thee in any point: wherefore once again I am forced to cry out for vengeance upon the offenders head: whosoever, first, for my disgrace, next, for my banishment, and now lastly for the loss of my two Babes, issued from the blood Royal of the Emperour of Constantinople. But seeing all these miseries have even tryed themselves upon my very heart. Come death, and finish what sorrows do but prolong. All this while Blandiman was ear witness of all these piteous plaints, inasmuch as he grew even weary of her walling, and in the best manner he could, comforted her dying Spirit, by falling to intreat her, that she would somewhat give over her moans, and betake her self to her feet: Whereunto she giving consent, he accompanied with the Woman he had brought with him, came into a Neighbouring Village, whereas they lodged and nourished her, till she had something recovered her strength, and in some measure forgotten the depth of her miseries. Blandiman began to break with his Lady on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my chance in looking you in the woods, to light upon your Brother, King Peppin, who demanded of me what tydings? But his words were bent and full of anger against you: wherefore Lady, my counsel is, that you make not towards him, for by that countenance I well perceive you shall have but slender welcome. For upon further questions demanded and answered, As soon as he heard me tell that

that the Emperour had exiled you, he lightly gave credit that it was the fault, and therefore he laies all the blame on you. O! (quoth the Lady) now what I most feared is come to pass, and I well perceiue that I am beset with aduersaries on every side: Well, be it as it may be, the Emperour hath exiled me without cause, what then shall I do? I will neuer return again to Paris, but take my way into some remote Land, where my body with my faults shall be smothered: For my Brothers anger is grown so great, that he could willingly deliuer me over to death; therefore it is better to liue and to save my life, than fall into the fury of so angry a Brother. This doleful speech she deliuered in tears, which Blandiman perceiuing, said unto her: Lady leaue off your tears, for be assured of my faithfull seruice, and here I offer my self, life, and all to be at your dispose; go whither you please. Why then (quoth the Lady) since thou art so resolute, let us resolve upon some strange aduenture, and therewithal passed forth to expose themselves to future dangers, where now we shall be forced to leaue them with sorrowful hearts, and return again to speak something of the Bear, that carried away one of the Children.

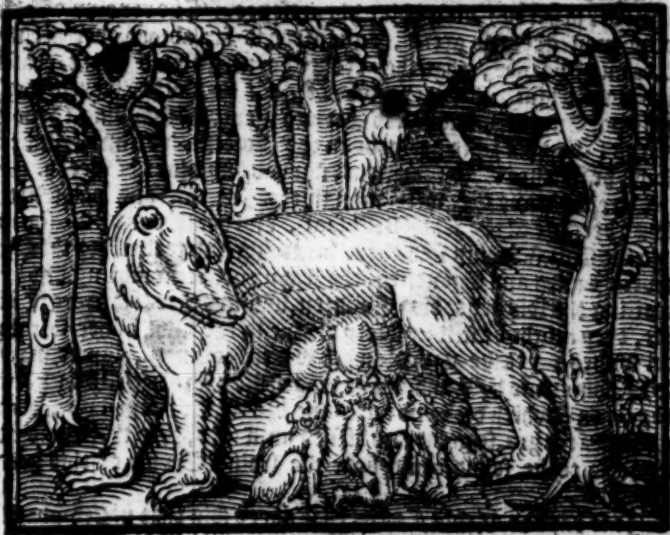


CAAP. VI.

Of the Bear, that bare away one of the Lady

Bellifant's Children.

THE Bear (as you have heard before) that had carried away one of the Children, all this while had offered it no violence, but bare it unto her cave, whither was Dark and obscure. In this Cave the Old Bear had four Young Ones, amongst whom she laid the Child to be reboiured, but mark the chance, and you shall finde at last how it came to pass, while the Young Bears did it and having, but with rough paws, trodden it to death. This was the first thing they



they did not devour it, but such a Barbarous kinde of favour toward
it, insomuch that she kept it, and gave it such among her young
ones the space of one whole year. This Child by reason of nour-
ishment it received from the Bear, became rough all over like a
beast, and as he grew in strength, began to rage up and down
in the woods, and when he met with other beasts would smite
them, and got such Mastery over them, that they began to shun
the place wherein he came, he was so extremely fierce amongst
them, and in this beast-like Estate passed he the space of fif-
teen years, growing up to such strength, that scarce any maner
beast in the forest durst be abroad, fearing to fall into his hands,
yet he should not hurt them to death, and did eat their flesh, and
drank their blood, but with more civility than any humane Creature. His name
was called Orson, he could not be called a Bear, but he was his Parson, and
lived like a Beast.

This Bear-man lived so long in the Forrest, that none (were he never so hardy) durst abide his presence. The renown of this wild-man grew so great, and spread so far abroad over all the Realm of France, that they of the Country round about chased and hunted him, but prevailed not, for he neither feared weapons nor Engines, but passed through them all, snapping them in peeces: All this time he abode in the Forrest, you must understand, he neither wore Garment, nor had any kinde of speech.

Here we leave the wild-man in the Forrest, and look a little what became of the Lady Bellysant, and her servant Blandiman, and we shall suddenly find them wandring and travelling through divers Lands and Countries, the Lady ever rememb'ring and bewailing the loss of her two Children, wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in safety: But in the midst of her sorrowful wishes, yet she passed on her weary Journey, sometime by Sea, sometime by Land, till at length she came to a Port in Portugal, on which did stand an invincible Castle, kept by a Gyant called Parragus, so great and of such puissance, that there was not a Horse to be found could bear the living Trunk of this great Gyant.

It so hapned at this Castle, that every Ship that passed by this Port was to pay tribute to this Gyant, which he himself did daily come abroad to receive. At length he came into the Ship wherein the Lady Bellysant, and her Squire had passed (for she was laden with all manner of rich Merchandizes) so casting his eyes about, he espied Bellysant, which he kindly took by the hand, and led her into the Castle to his Wife (for he was married to a beautiful Lady) Blandiman followed his Lady also, fearing the Gyant, but he behaved himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any violence but presented her to his Wife, who received her gladly, and had great Joy at the gracious presence of so beautiful a Lady. The Gyant gave charge to his Wife, to use her honourably, and Blandiman her Squire. During her abode in the Castle, she would often shed tears, when she bethought her of the losse of her two Children, which the Lady of the Castle perceiving, would often comfort her in the best manner she could, and ever placed her next her own person, for the joy and pleasure that she ever took

in her company. Within this Castle she tarried some long time; and here we must leave her, and now we will return back again to tell you somewhat of the Emperour of Constantinople, and the false Arch-Priest.



CHAP. VI.

How by the Council of the Arch-Priest, new Customes, and Taxations were raised through the City of Constantinople, and how the Treason came to light.

Alexander the Emperour, having shamefully expelled Belly-sant his Wife, Sister to King Pepin, oftentimes repented him of the fact: but by the cursed Counsel of the Arch-Priest, unto whose words the Emperour gave such credit continually that what he spake was an Oracle in the ears of the said Emperour, Inasmuch as he continually heaped new honours upon that Traiterous Priest, advancing him even above the highest in his Empire, and whatsoever he commanded, was obeyed. At last, having gotten all power and authority into his hands, he began to inhanche the customes and taxes of the City of Constantinople, which exactions of his against all reason, struck even to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the residue of these his forced impositions, it happened that according to their yearly customes there were held a great Mart in the City which falls out about the month of September. Whereunto resort many people for divers occasions, especially Merchants. The said Mart day being come, the Emperour gave the charge thereof unto this Arch-Priest, who accordingly provided himself, and at the same purpose armed 200 men to guard his own person: being thus accompanied, he took his way into the City, to attend his charge which the Emperour had so lately bestowed upon him. It chanced so, that among the rest of them that sold wares the Merchant was there present (of whom you have read before)

namely, this Merchant that came riding by the way whilst Blaudiman (the Ladies Chaire) and the Arch-Priest was fighting: The Arch-Priest perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearful lest all his villainy should now come to light. The presence of this Merchant much troubled the Arch-Priest, insomuch as he wished (if it were possible) his death, and would assuredly have effected the same by the authority that he now had in his hands, but still he feared some great tumult would arise thereby. Now mark what followed: This Merchant among the rest, was richly furnished with all rich and costly wares, as Cloath of Gold, Silver, Silk, &c. whereby he received great wealth, and took more money than any five Merchants beside. The fair being ended, the Arch-Priest sent forth his officers, to demand and receive his accustomed duties due upon the sale of those Merchandizes. The officers came unto this Merchant, and said, Sir, you must pay ten pence on every pound that you have taken, for so it is ordained by the great officer to whom it doth belong,

The Merchant herent being angry, said, cursed be that disloyal Arch-Priest, for he is the onely cause of these new raised exactions upon us: It had been good for all men, if he had long since had his desert, and with shame and infamy had ended his dayes; At which reproachful words against the Arch-Priest, the Officer took his staff and smote the Merchant on the head, that presently the blood gushed out. Then the Merchant feeling the blow about his ears, drew his sword and struck so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feet for dead. Upon this arose a great rout throughout the fair, insomuch as the rest of the Officers coming up to help their fellow, took the Merchant and brought him before the Arch-Priest. The Arch-Priest glad of this opportunity, would needs have put him to death, but the Merchant appealed to Justice, to have his cause tryed by the Law. The Arch-Priest fearing the people, sent him away to the Emperour, for nothing would heeistie him but his life: But mark, in seeking the life of the Merchant, he purchased his own death, as hereafter followeth.

The Arch-Priest caused the Merchant to be brought into the
Empe-

Emperors Palace, whereas he in person late as Judge. The Emperoz being set, the Arch-Priest brought his advocate to plead his cause, which was to this effect, that a Merchant had committed murder, and also had spoken many opprobrious words against the said Arch-Priest. The advocate having ended his accusation, the Merchant suddenly fell on his knees before the Emperoz, and said, Mighty and most excellent Prince, out of your benignity, give me but audience to be heard, before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a matter of so great importance that it touches your person even in the highest degree of treason. Say on, said the Emperoz: Mighty Emperoz and my Lords all, I would advise you to make fast the Gates round about this your Palace, that none depart from this place. The Emperoz did as he requested: then said the Merchant with a loud voice, Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the honor of the Emperoz, and the Triumphant reign of his person, attend my words: for the time is come that the Treason of the cursed Arch-Priest will not be rehealed and come to light. Then thus great Emperoz, this is that cursed man whom you have ever nourished and brought to great honor, who hath deceived your trust; for he it is that hath wrought all the discord, betwixt you and your virtuous Lady, whom you have banished both from your Bed, Court, and Country, and by whom you have received more dishonor, than ever he reaped honor from you: for it had been his part most of any to have nourished and advanced your renown, and to have preferred your honor, but contrarily he hath made my Dread Lord infamous by these his wicked plots, & brought upon you great scandal among all Nations: for he secretly and under-hand made love to your Emperesse, but she denied him: the which he perceiving, that there was no likelihood to accomplish his desire, it drove him into a thousand fears, lest this his disloyal act should come to light: and therefore devised to misse unto your most faithful love unto your Bed. Of all which his false accusations, I say here before you, and all your Lords and Barons that he speak like a Traitor, and for the more approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the truth of what these eyes of mine have witnessed.

It so happened on a day (after the banishment of the Emperors Bellyfaint) as I was riding about my affairs, I chanced to travel through a wood: at last passing along the way, I found this treacherous Priest transformed out of the habit of his Priesthood, into the shape of a Knight, even armed at all points ready for the combat with the enemy. Drawing nearer and nearer, I might behold him in fight with another man unarmed, which at last I found to be Blandimah, Squire to the banished Lady, who conducted her in the time of her exile.

I still perceiving they encountred one another so fiercely, began to call unto them, to give over their direful fight: but they little regarded what I said: I did perceive the Lady piteously weeping, and at last said unto me thus: Gentle Merchant, and kinde friend, lend me thy aid against this treacherous Arch-Priest, that seeketh by force to rob me of mine honour. This is he, and onely he, by whom I am banished from my Emperors Bed and Country. With that I put spurs to mine Horse, and ran between them to seporate them, which this Arch-Priest perceiving, suddenly fled into the wood, being full assured that I had knowledge who he was. Noble Emperour it had been my part to have revealed this long before, but I durst not open my mouth unto you, for fear his greatness would have out-wayed my truth, and so have brought my self unto an untimely death.

The Emperour having heard this tale, sighed, and at last fell into tears: in which tears he turned him unto the Arch-Priest, casting his disloyalty on this manner: Th thou false servant (quoth he) have I ever studied to do thee honor, and exalt thee to high dignities, and hast thou quitted all my love and trust with disloyalty and treasons? Well, I have seen now what I ever mistrusted, thou hast made me of all men most unhappy. But it is not so much thy fault, as my own, thy treason hath bewitched me. In an evil hour I gave credit to thy false speaking tongue, and hereby deserve to carry the brand of my own folly.

The Arch-Priest hearing the Emperour thus distressed, began so to treat his highness not to be so impatient, neither to give credit to this slanderous tale that the Merchant had communicated against him: for (quoth he) he beloveth me, and I am no less faith-

ty of that wherewith he accuseth me; thou lyest falsely (quoth the Merchant) thou canst not excuse thy self in what I have charged thee withal, and if thou stand still in the denial, I challenge thee by the single Combate, to maintain the truth, and try my quarrel: and hereupon, I threw down my gage, and withal tender my body thereunto, for to make good what I have here spoken: and more than that, ere night shut in, I will deliver thy body to death, or yield my self vanquished.

The Emperoz seeing the Merchant so resolute, and to stand to the tryal of the combate, he said, Arch-Priest, it is time that either thou quit thy self by answering this challenge, or to yield thy self guilty of what hath been laid to thy charge. The Arch-Priest replied on this manner: Mighty Emperoz, I must let you understand, that to answer the Merchants Challenge, or take up Arms is contrary to my place and calling, for I am a sacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay (quoth the Emperoz) in this case no excuse is to be admitted, but you must either fight, or yield your self a Traitor to our Crown and dignity. At these words the Arch-Priest was some what troubled in mind, yet at last he was faine to accept the Combate, because the Emperoz charged him so deeply: and besides he could have no excuse admitted. So the Emperoz commanded them both to take keeping, till such time he had sent Letters to King Pepin of France; but in conclusion the Traitor had his desert, as hereafter followeth,



CHAP. VII.

How the Emperoz by the Counsel of his Nobility sent for King Pepin to see the Combate fought between the Arch-Priest and the Merchant.

The day of the Combate was appointed, and the first preparations came unto the Emperoz: King Pepin was come to Rome, to the aid of the Pope against the Antipope. The Emperoz hearing

ing therefore, by y^e grave counsell of the *Lords*, dispatched Ambassadors thither, with command to bring King Pepin to Constantinople, meaning thereby to make him an eye-witness of these contentions, and of the cause of this combat, which was to try the Arch-Priest a traitor, and also to hold the Emperor excused in that he had by his false accusations banished his Empress. The Ambassadors thus dispatched, you must imagine, that after long travel, at last they came to Rome, whereas they found King Pepin, as before was told them. King Pepin having heard of their coming, gave them entertainment appertaining to their several degrees: all which being done, the Ambassadors thus spake unto King Pepin. Great Lord, we present these Letters from *Alexander* thy Brother, Emperor of Constantinople, our Lord and Master, of which we intreat a speedy answer. King Pepin took the Letters graciously, and read them: and having thoroughly considered the contents, with a loud voice he said, My Lords (by the Gods) here is much matter of tidings, and also of as great admiration. The Emperor *Alexander* greets me well, and sends me word that my Sister *Belysant* his betroathed Wife, hath been by him wrongfully banished, & that by reason of a false Arch-Priest unto whom he hath given too much trust: which Priest for these his unreasonable facts, is accused by a Merchant, and for tryal of the truth of this his accusation, will put himself in jeopardy of life, by single combat in open field, body to body, with this tracherous Arch-Priest. Now it is so fallen out, that the day and place is ready for the tryal of his fact, whereby I shall be fully satisfied whether my Sister hath been guilty of that wherewith she hath been charged and most shamefully cast forth into banishment. Upon all which I vow by my Crown and Dignity, that if the Emperor be found to have offered her this indignity, without just cause, that I will be avenged against him in the extreamest manner that War shall thunder forth against him. Having ended his speech unto his Lords in the presence of the Ambassadors, he commanded with speed that every man should address himself to accompany him to Constantinople, to behold the manner of this fight between the Merchant and the Arch-Priest.

The day of his departure from Rome being come, he takes his way

way towards Constantinople, where after some few days of travel he safely arrived. The Emperor hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made triumphs to welcome him, for all were filled with joy at his approach. The Emperor mounted on Horse-back richly accompanied, marched out of the City to meet his Brother King. At last they met, but the Emperor overcome with sorrow and tears at the remembrance of Belysant, could not utter a word. On the other side, Pepin being fiercely angered at what happened to his Sister, gave no respect unto the Emperors tears, but proudly began to gird him in this manner; Emperor (quoth he) leave off these your lamentations, and shake off these weeds of sorrow that you seem to wear for my Sister Belysant: For he that hath a Harlot unto his Wife, I account him mad to grieve at her misbehaviour, and since my Sister hath proved such a one, let her go and take care for her self, she is not worthy of so much as one tear from such an eye of Majesty.

Nay, nay, said the Emperor, I speak not you so evilly against your Sister, for I am now fully perswaded, that she is composed of all virtue and true honesty, and that against all equity, I have banished her out of my Country. Think you so now (quoth King Pepin?) then are you worthy of a double shame, and you do bewray unto the world your weakness, and what great foolishness remains in you, when as by the report of one man, and that a traitor too, you would with such rigor proceed against an innocent Lady, and so suddedly (like a common Harlot) throw her out into banishment, shame and dishonour, being of the blood Royal of France. The Emperor hearing the King to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowful and said unto him in this manner; Alas, my Lord, do not thus follow me with wrath and anger, but rather turn your tongue upon some milder saying, for to that intent have I sent for you, your own eyes may be a witness of that truth. His true (quoth King Pepin) but it is all too late to say now you say, for you have delivered over my Sister into the hands of a man, that more is given to banishment, and for aught I know, to death it self, for I know not whether ever I shall behold her again or not. Alas, that you being so great a Person, should so unadvisedly be so rashly to give such sudden judgement against an Innocent,

Innocent. I do confels, one may commit a fault and dishonorable act, but Repentance is able to make amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their Dignity and renown: for that once lost, whether it be right or wrong, it is never again possible to be recovered. Again, how little have you esteemed of the honor of my Kingly office, judge you, when first without deliberation, and next without any knowledge given me, you have proceeded so against my Sister, make it plain against you, that envy towards her and me, was the onely cause of these false and unjust wrongs done against us. Whilst these words passed betwixt them, they were now entered Constantinople, where with great joy and gladness they were received of the Inhabitants. The Emperour would have had King Pepin to have lodged with him in his Palace, but the King denied, and caused his train to lodge within the City, and he himself also. Then the Emperour caused many gifts and presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: for King Pepin thought of nothing but the dishonor done unto his Sister, and that the rather, for the whole City accounted her the fairest, the most virtuous, and the chafest Lady in all the world; and that by injustice and treason she was banished.



C A A P. IX.

How the Merchant and the High-Priest encountred at the place appointed about the clearing of the Lady *Bellysant*, and what a glorious victory did betryde the Merchant.

NOW was the day appointed come for the Combate betwixt the Arch-priest and the Merchant: wherefore every thing was made in readines according to the command of the Emperour. At last there came both the Combatants into the field, and presented themselves before the Emperour. Being both before the Emperour, & attendants, (Knights & others) upon the Arch-Priest, armed in a most sumptuous armor of Proof, all imbroid with gold and Pearl,

Pearl, which made such a glittering shew, that it even dazzled the eyes of the beholders. Being thus richly armed, the Arch-Priest came forth into the field, and took his place appointed him, at the one end of the Lists, appointed for that purpose. The Emperour beholding the glorious shew that the Arch-Priest made in his arms, called forth the Merchant, causing him first to kneel down, and in the presence of the assembly dubbed him Knight. Then commanded he, that a most rich Armoz should be put upon him in the presence of the Emperour, who during the time he was arming, promised unto this Merchant, if he overcame the Arch-Priest, to advance him to great livings, and high authority. These two adversaries being now in readines, and each having their Blazen about their neck, their Horses were brought forth, and they proudly mounted, ready to give battel: the Emperour gave straight charge unto all his Officers of arms, to have a special eye unto the Arch-Priest, for fear lest he on the sudden should slye the field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their lives. The Merchant thus mounted, and his sword girt to him, first entred the Lists, after whom issued such abundance of people, that they were numberless. Then after came the Arch-Priest sumptuously accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great honor and dignity. The Combatants thus both entred the Lists, ready to charge on the other. King Pepin was there in person, called out aloud unto the Merchant, saying unto him: my friend, the Gods give thee victory against this false Traitor. I vow unto thee here before this great Assembly (so I may but find out the truth of my Sister Bellysant) notwithstanding the great advancement that the Emperour hath promised, to take thee into France, and make the Companion with the best of my Kingdom. The Merchant gave the King great thanks, and said: Dread King, I doubt not but this night to make this traiterous Priest confess that he hath treacherously sought the destruction of your Sister. Then came a Herald administering to them both an oath, and so clearing the Lists left the Champions to their fortunes.

Now are both the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Herald of the field brought each of them a Spear, which they no sooner had received, but they put spurs to their Horses, and ran



With such violence together, that, their Spears were broken to their hands. Then they began to set forward to another course, chargeing each other with their Swords, in such violent manner, that with their fury they rebounded from their Armour to the ground, cutting off whole quarters of their Coats, and left them as a prey for those that attended the fight.

The Arch-Priest seeing himself so illly matched, gave over the fight, till towards the evening (for such was the custome of the Country, that in any challenged Combate either party might refuse to follow the fight so eagerly, but that they might have a breathing time, so the Combate were yielded vanquished before Sun-set, or else abide the sentence of death) thinking thereby to weary out the Merchant. Which the Merchant being privy unto, so behaved himself, that he prepared to receive the Arch-Priest courageously when he encountered him; inasmuch that when they came together to make tryal of their valor, and to get conquest, the

the one over the other; the Merchant so redoubled his strokes, that at last he smote off one of his ears, and his steel Habergrion, and with the violence of the same blow, the Merchants sword fell from his hand. The Arch-Priest perceiving his enemy unarmed, he put spurs to his horse and charged him with such violence, that he ran against the Merchants horse, and thrust out one of his eyes: the horse feeling himself hurt, ran up and down as mad, leaping and curvetting so furiously that he unhorsed his Rider, and so hard was the fortune of the Merchant, that in his fall, his foot hung fast in the stirrop, whereby he was brought into great danger, the horse hurrying him along the field, that all were very sorrowful to behold this lamentable spectacle, and with the amazement thereof grew desperate in their hopes, King Pepin also was soze discouraged at this disastrous chance, that the tears did even trickle down his cheeks, and in a silent speech to himself thus he spake. Alas Merchant, I now well perceive thy days are at an end, and that the trust I reposed in thee is utterly frustrate: for by thy fall I see my Sisters chastity to be weak, and the rather, for that the gods have suffered thee to fall so unluckily this day, so that I must needs confesse, that the Emperor hath done well in expelling her his Kingdom: Oh, that her day of birth, had proved her day of burial, it had been happy for her, but thrice happier to me, for only by her is the blood Royal of France brought into great infamy: and were it so I had her at my dispose, I would be the first man should see execution done upon her, even to death.

Now that which was so miraculous, was, all this time that the Merchant was dragged up and down the field, the Arch-Priest could not inforce his horse to come up unto the Merchant, but fled out too and fro, whereby he could not make prey upon the Merchant, as he thought to have done. But first at last the Merchants horse, that had thus drawn him up and down the field, foundred and fell down, which gave great advantage to the Merchant, who with that fall got his leg from forth the stirrop, and at last got up on his feet, like a valiant and hardy Champion. The Arch-Priest perceiving his Merchant had recovered his legs, came running with strong violence upon him, and thereby lent him five or six soze blows upon the head and shoulders, that the

poor Merchant was eben astounded. At last, he was forced to give back to recover breath, and in a very little space, finding himself somewhat relieved, he subtilly and fiercely gave a fresh assault upon the Arch-Priest, against whom he struck with such violence, that the sword fell out of his hand, but he had first so wounded the Arch-Priest, that the blood ran quite through his armor upon the earth. This so vexed the Arch-Priest, that he grew mad with rage; and turned his horse upon the Merchant, minding to have overrun him with his horse. But the Merchant perceiving his drift, prepared to receive him, and therewithal drew a long knife, and panced it into the belly of the horse, so that the horse being thus wounded, began to sing and leap, insomuch as the Arch-Priest was in danger to be unhorsed, and doing what he could to save himself, he lost his Shield. The Merchant espyed him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the Shield, and threw it away, so that he could no more recover it: that done, he made again towards his horse, and smote him into the belly with his sword, so that by this time, both the horse and his Rider came tumbling down upon the ground.

The Arch-Priest being thus unhorsed, was very nimble to recover himself, but yet the Merchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a blow, that as he began to rise, he laid him flat again upon the ground, and then leaped upon him, pulled off his Helmet, thinking to have smitten off his head, when the Arch-Priest saw himself thus vanquished, he was exceeding wroth, but seeing little availed, he said thus unto the Merchant: Alas, my friend, I beseech thee take mercy upon me, and while I am yet living, give me some time to confess my self, that I may free my soul of danger, for to thee I yield my self as vanquished. The Merchant hearing him say so, was very courteous, and granted him his desire. The Priest had no sooner gotten on his feet, but he forsook his confession, and suddenly got the Merchant in his arms, and threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in most sudden outrage, saying thus to the Merchant, I have thee now at advantage, and from my hands thou shalt not escape with life, if what I shall command thee thou do not effect. Ha, replied the Merchant, hast thou thus betrayed me? Well, it is so that now I stand

stand at thy mercy, & that thou mayest do with me what pleaseth thee: therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my life I shall gladly do it. Then thus, go with me before the Emperour and King Pepin, & there openly in the hearing of all men, testify that thou falsely hast accused me, and that thereby I may be cleared of those false calumniationes which by thy means have been brought upon me: all which if thou effectually accomplish, I swear and promise thee to save thy life, and besides, be a means unto the Emperour and his Brother, to buy thee peace and forgiveness of this thy foul fact committed both against me and them also; Nay more, I swear to thee by the faith of a Gentleman, and by the Order of Priest-hood, to give thee a Piece of mine in Marriage, who shall be unto thee, rich, fair, and of pleasant behaviour: and to conclude, thou shalt say more then any of thy kindred ever told, thou shalt be made both more honourable and wealthy: Therefore now advise thy self, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable life, or miserable in an untimely death. The Merchant having heard the Arch-Priests tale, was upon the suddain exceeding sorrowful, and not without cause, but not knowing on the suddain, what to resolve upon, he at length thus answered: Sir Priest, your Arguments are grounded upon good reasons, therefore I am ready to accomplish your desires, so that you will be as mindful of your oaths and promises. In me, quoth the Arch-Priest, there shall appear no fault. Why then (quoth the Merchant) let us set forward toward the Emperour, and there will I set you free from all those accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well, said the Arch-priest, wherefore rise up then, and let us go together. The Merchant had no sooner got on his feet, but he began again afresh to open all the Treason of the Arch-Priest; even to his teeth, and again he took courage, and now would requite him in the same sort he had served him before: and suddenly he clasping him at advantage, he laid thus: Arch-Priest: you have taught me to play my part, and therefore think no more upon confessions, for you shall confess to me or none. The Arch-Priest seeing himself bearen at his own weapons, began again to threaten, but

the Merchant not regarding his wounds, presently put out his eyes, and gave him so many deadly blows, that he made him sure enough for rising to do him any harm. Then the Merchant called the Marshals of the field, and said. Lo, here you may see that I have done my best endeavour against the Arch-Priest, and if he be banquished, say so, for I am sure I have brought him so that pass, that I may kill him out-right if I please. Therefore my request now unto you is, that you would conduct Alexander the Emperour of Constantinople, and Pepin King of France, hither to this place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be eye-witnesses of the confession which the Arch-Priest shall make unto them, and also to hear in what unjust manner he waged this combat against me.

The Marshals did according to the request of the Merchant, and then presently came King Alexander the Emperour, with King Pepin, and all the Nobles, even to the place where the Arch-Priest lay all sorrowful, and fully banquished. Then the Emperour demanded of him the truth of the matter, which the Arch-Priest confessed, declaring the whole Plot of his villainies; and how by his means the Lady Belysant had been wrongfully banished. When the standers by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of tears were shed on every side, but especially the Emperour, for his lamentations were so violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitterness and hearty sorrow. Now, if the Emperour were so sorrowful, what may you think of King Pepin her Brother. And it was not without great cause, when they saw and knew that by too much trust given to a treacherous Priest, they had lost the virtuous Lady Belysant. Between these two great Princes there was great joy and great sorrow: Joy to King Pepin that his sister was found innocent and blameless: Sorrow to the Emperour that he should be the only means by this suggestion of his to bring her punishment.

At last lamentations was laid apart: when they had heard all the confessions of the Arch-Priests Treasons, The Emperour consulted with his counsellors that the Traitor should be put into a Cart drawn with four horses, and so finish his miserable days, as he had traiterously sought the life of that innocent La-

dy : So the execution was suddenly to be done, and it being done, the assembly of people of all sorts was dismissed.

Afterwards King Pepin withdrew himself towards his lodging, but the Emperoz sorrowful for what had happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himself at his feet, began thus to say : Alas dear Brother, I am all sorrowful for this my error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable crime against you, my Lady your Sister, and the residue of these great Nobles your attendants : Let it suffice, that I behold my own folly, what shall I say ? I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my self into your hands, and do to me whatsoever pleaseth you : and for a further satisfaction, I render up into your hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining : for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not master of mine own affections. Take it I say, for I will no longer be served, but during the rest of my life will become a Servant to thee or any : for no better have I deserved. King Pepin perceiving the Emperoz so passionate, and so humble minded, kindly took him from the ground, and before all his Lords, freely forgave all trespasses. So that before they parted, there was a general peace concluded on both parties between them, and a most speedy course taken to send abroad into all parts of the world to seek out the distressed Lady Bellysant. Thus all things settled in order, King Pepin prepared to take his leave of the Emperoz, and so returned back again into his own Country.



CHAP. XXIII. *How King Pepin returned from Constantinople into France, and after failed to Rome, to fight against the Sarazens that had surprized the City.*

King Pepin having taken his leave from Constantinople (as you have heard) after a long journey, arrived in France, and so to Orleante, to refresh his long & tyred spirits, called to and fro

in melancholly and heauy cogitations, for the woeful mischances befallen unto his Sister Hellynor. Being thus safely arriued and seated at Orleans, the King was right ioyful that at the last he had attained the place he so much desired, by reason that it was one of the goodliest Forrests in the Realm of France. Being (as I said) come hither, he caused great banquetts to be made for his welcme home: which was accordingly performed.

In the midst of their feasting and Reuellings, the Esquire that had the charge of the Orphan Valentine, took and presented him before the King, saying unto his Majesty on this manner: Dread Sovereign, Lo, here I present before you the poor Orphan that your Majesty found in the Forrest of Orleans, and the same Child which you commanded me to be brought up, not at mine expence, Dread Sovereign, but at your owne. My Leige, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, because he is growing to mans estate; and so may it please your Majesty, it is time to dispose of him as you please: The King having heard the words of the Esquire, called this Orphan (named Valentine) unto him, and took him by the hand, and asked diuers questions unto him, all which he answered with much modesty, and great wisdom, and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupbords of Plate should be given unto him. Moreover (said the King) I command that this Orphan Valentine be dearly preserved and kept, for that you shall perceiue I respect him above common love, I will also, that this Infant shall be nourished and kept with my Daughter Eglantine, he is both fair, wise, and well endowed with all the richest gifts of Nature.

The King having given this command, it was accordingly accomplished, inso much that they were both under one government of food and the same Purse, and had one and the same Attendance, yea, euen way they toied one in the company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kinde of lamentation till they came together again; but especially the Kingdome daughter, who so pondered on the prudent carriages of the Orphan, that he became in love with him, inso much as his absence brought her downe to thousand fears, and

have

change her melancholly thoughts into a thousand doubts.

Now Valentine was ever pleasing himself in feats of Arms, as Horse, Armour, Jests, and Tournaments, still exposing himself to all dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the inclination of this youth, allotted unto him what his heart desired, furnished him with Armour, Horse, Lands, Revenues, and made him Lord of rich possessions. Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court many secret mutterings, whereby many fretted so sore in envy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying, that when he was at the best, he was but a found stray, poor, base, without any known Parents or Friends, of no gentle or noble stock, and such like: which when Valentine heard, he could take no other revenge, but sit him down and weep: whose tears fair Eglantine perceiving, would in a tender woman-like affection accompany him, even pouring forth her tears also for company.

At length when he saw tears little availed, he began to forsake it, and taking heart, bore himself like a man, amidst the greatest in the Court, carrying himself in such humble and gentle frame, that he gained the love of all sorts, and degrees, as well Nobles, as Inferiours.

Valentine thus growing up in love of the Court, all this while his Brother Orson runs in the Forrest, all rough and covered with hair like a Bear, and leading the life of a Beast, where we leave him for a while, and return unto the affairs of King Pepin. It so chanced, that there came unto Orleans divers Ambassadors from the Pope, demanding aid against the Sarazens, enemies of the holy faith, who had lately taken the City of Rome by violence: King Pepin understanding hereof by divers Letters received, added himself, & his powers to make resistance against this common enemy. And amongst the rest of his worthy followers, he ordained this young Valentine a chief commander. Fair Eglantine hearing of Valentine should make one, became wondrous heavy and sorrowful; for that she loved him more than any other Creature, and secretly by stealth sent a Messenger unto him to come and speak with her: and when he came, she saying, said unto him: Alas Valentine, my Love, how I have since sorrowed at all

my joy, for I perceiue you will betake your self to a dangerous
 Adar. Gentle Love, leaue me not so desolate, would to the
 Gods, that I had neither father nor friend in the world to con-
 tradict my will, and then shouldst thou son perceiue how well my
 affection stands to thy person: for if wishes might auaile, I swear
 (by the Gods) thou art the only man I would loyn my self unto
 in the hands of marriage, and then shouldst thou be the King
 of France and I Queen. The young man hearing her idle ima-
 ginations, said, Madam, leaue these womanish dotages, you know
 I am no person fitting your estate, I am but a found stray that
 your father hath caused long time to be nourished for charity sake.
 I am no way either fitting you, or the meanest Damoysel attending
 your person, make your choice else-where, and loyn Royal blood
 unto yours, and so with all duty I take my leave, and commend
 you to the Gods. Having thus ended his speech, away he goes,
 leaving the poor Lady all heauy, desolate, and in the midst of
 mourning.

By this time, the King and all his Powers were in a readines
 to depart, and taking their way from Orleans towards Rome,
 they went through a mighty Forrest, and being entred, the King
 called his Lords and Barons together, and said thus unto them.
 My Lords it is not unknown unto you, that in these woods (as
 report goeth) there lieth a strange monster, a Wilde-man, much
 feared of Passengers, which spectacle of mans shape, I long to
 behold, before I venture out any further upon our intended voy-
 age to Rome. The Lords generally consented, and the chase was
 suddenly appointed. Being entred the Wood, they chased diuers
 sorts of Wilde-beasts, and overcame them: but as for Orson the
 Wilde-man, none durst adventure the finding forth of him, save
 onely his Brother Valentine (but he knew nothing) and he follow-
 ed still the chase, hoping at last both to find and to fight with him
 also. Every way they begirt the Wood, some one way, some ano-
 ther: the King himself ventured so far, that he came before a
 Cave, dark and obscure, whereas this Wilde-man used to hide him-
 self. Orson perceiuing the King, rushed out upon him, caught him
 within his nails (the which were long and crooked) and in rough
 and ravenous manner, cast him on the ground. The King thus
 sub=

suddenly surprized by a savage man, never lookt for life, but in a piteous manner cryed out for help, who was seconded by a valiant Knight at Arms, which espying the King to be almost strangled, suddenly drew his sword to have run the Wild-man through. Orson perceiuing the glittering sword, left the King and ran furiously upon the Knight, took him in his arms, that he overthrew him horse and all. The horse sore affrighted, got up again, and in a mad fit ran up and down the Forrest, but as for the Rider (though a Knight at Arms) Orson held him so fast with his fangs and talons, that at last he pulled him in pieces. In the mean space the King escaped, and meeting part of his company, related to them the great danger he had escaped, and the fearful death of the Knight. These tydings much amazed the rest of the company: yet being manfully resolved, they joyned themselves together, and marched towards the cave to meet with Orson, and either to take him alive or to put him to death in the Cave. But being come thither, they found the Knight dead & torn in pieces, but Orson they could not find (for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered only by his Brother Valentine:) of whose proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the King perceiuing their labour lost, gave over the chase, and set forward towards Rome. After this, the King ranked his forces into battel-ray, and the great Ensign of France was given to one called Myllan Daugler, a very valiant Prince, and a wise Leader, so that he and his two Brethren, Gervays and Sampson, had the whole command of the forces that then were marching towards Rome.

When they were come unto Rome, King Pepin desired battel, and would fain understand the state that the City now stood in under the conquest of the Sarazens, but it was told him he should not be too inquisitive of those affairs: for the Admiral of the Sarazens had surprized the City, and put multitudes to the sword, and had spoiled and defaced all the Churches and made them Temples fit for their heathenish Idols, and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-Bishops, Bishops, Priors, Monks, friers, and all the Ecclesiastical persons for to serve at their heathenish Altars, and to sacrifice to their Devils after the customs of the Heathens.

where

When King Pepin understood hereof he was much enraged, to hear that the Christians were thus captivated by Heathens: Wherefore he addrest himself nearer unto the City, and there having assembled all his forces, he began to draw them into divers Squadrons, meaning thereby to give them a suddain assault, for his fury was so great against these Heathenish Sarazens, that he vowed revenge upon them: but taking better advice, he referred himself and his Army for a season: what after befel, shall be declared at large, when fit occasion serveth our purpose.



CHAP. XI.

How King Pepin besieged Rome, and how Valentine justed with the Admiral of the Sarazens, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won again from the Sarazens.

King Pepin being thus come to Rome, besieged it, and after some few days spent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mighty men of War, and began to speak unto them in this manner: My Lords and followers, you well know that this Heathenish Admiral, Enemy to the Christian Faith, and Church of Rome, hath put many Christians to the Sword, and violently troden under foot all such as withstood his power, therefore it is our duties to commiserate their estate that are thus overthron, and to try the fortune of a battel against those Heathenish Pagans, and either drive them out of the City or leave our dead Carcasses as a prey, as many have done before. Wherefore I King Pepin resting upon this resolution, would fain find out a man to bear unto the proud Admiral a Letter of defiance in my name. King Pepin having finished his speech, there was none amongst them made him any answer to his request. At length Valentine seeing all stand mute, stepped forth before the Emperor, and began to speak in this manner: Mighty Sovereign, so you be pleased to give me leave, I will undertake the

the Message, and shall no whit fear to speak both unto the Pagan Admirall, and to the whole Host of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many as they be, and my return shall make proof that I have done my Message both with honour and advantage to your Majesty.

The King hearing Valentine thus forward, & of such undoubted and ballant resolution, was right ioyful: and all those of his princely train greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous spirit. Whereupon the King called forth unto him a Secretary, willing him to draw a Letter of defiance, and deliver the same to Valentine. Valentine prepared himself therunto, and no sooner had he received the Letters, but he took leave of the King, and all his train, and being bravely mounted, he took his way towards Rome, and so to the Palace where the Admirall lay. So coming thither, he came before the Admirall, and saluted him after this manner: The Gods preserve the Noble & Puissant King Pepin, my Lord and Sovereign: and Mahomet whom thou servest, save and defend the redoubted Admirall. When Valentine had thus spoken, the Admirall rowzed him from his Chair, and with fierce and frowning brow replied thus unto him, Messenger return, and get thee gone out of my sight, and say thus unto King Pepin, will him either renounce his faith, and believe on Mahomet, or else let him look to receive no other sentence then death, and so destroy him together with all his Lands and Kingdom. Get thee gone and make here no longer abode, for I say reply not a word, for my heart is all enraged, that so long I suffer thee.

Again, I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty enterprise, thus to enter my Palace, to deliver any such message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the height of my Majesty, If that I did assuredly know what thou hast done were through pride of heart and insolency, thereby to make a mock at our Majesty, thou shouldst never return to King Pepin, to carry an answer to thy proud Masters Letters. Valentine hearing these hot and furious words sounding from the Admirall, began to be afraid: wherefore deliberating with himself what to do, he humbly did bow himself to the ground, and said, I am not unworthy to be called thy prisoner, and I am come hither for what you

you shall understand the manner of my coming, you will be assured thereat. Why then (quoth the Admiral) say on, tell us how thou art come, for I swear by Mahomet, I shall take great pleasure in hearing thee relate thine enterprize. Then said Valentine, Sir, so it is, that I was accused to King Pepin for a Coward, and then that since I came with him to this War, I would secretly have stoln away from the Camp, and returned back again into France, for which (great Admiral) the King hath me in great disgrace, and vowed the next morning to smite off my head. I perceiving my self in this danger, sought rather to save my life, than to lose both life and honour, and therefore gave it forth throughout the Court, that I would undertake to come to your Court to desire you on King Pepins behalf: and therewithal, that I would challenge you to break three Spears with you in single combat to try your valiancy, and to win unto my self that lost honour that before I told unto you: wherefore my request is, that your Greatness would grant me my request, otherwise I dare never return again, lest the King put me to death. The Admiral hearing this pittifull, yet cunning tale of Valentine, said unto him, Son, I do swear by Mohomet, thou shalt not be refused, but at this instant I offer thee the Jests, and to the end, that those French-men that lye in siege before the City may have a sight hereof, and see thy valour, I will ordain the place of Justing to be without the City. Valentine humbly thanked him, and in token of his acceptance and feigned love, he fell down and kissed the feet of the Admiral. Valentine grew up in great favour in the Admirals Court, but yet it often troubled his mind, that he never could understand who were his Parents: but the while he bestowed his wandring thoughts hereabout, the Admiral said thus unto him: Fair Son, me thinks you are very penitente and sad. 'Tis true (quoth he) and not without cause, for I am much afraid that I shall be slain in these Jests, wherefore my request is, that I may have a Confessor to give me absolution for my sins. Then the Admiral commanded that a Priest should be brought unto him, The Priest being come, said unto Valentine, Now confess you unto me. Valentine getting the Priest asse, and being together, he said thus unto him: Sir, you are a Christian Priest, and above
all

all other, you ought most to defend the Christian Faith, wherefore
 hearken to that I shall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great
 secrecy. Thus it is, You know that this day I am to fight with the
 heathenish Admiral, the greatest enemy of Christian People: now
 I am well assured, that a great number of the *Saracens* will issue
 forth of the City, to be eye witnesses of these fights, to be held with-
 out the walls of the City. Therefore you shall give warning to all
 Christians to keep within the walls, arming themselves in a readi-
 ness, and closely keep it from the ears of the Pagans: so when the
 Pagans are come forth to behold these fights, the Christians sudden-
 ly shall surprize the Guards that keep the Gates, and if any mutiny
 arise, let them keep out those that are out. And send a Messenger
 to King *Pepin* of what is done, that he with his army may come up-
 on them that are without, while those within are set on by the
 armed Christians, so begirting them on every side, that in the end
 we may make such a slaughter on them, that the Christians may re-
 ceive both their City in peace, and their former liberty. So having
 ended his speech, the Priest departed. Then the Admiral com-
 manded Valentine to be led into his Chamber to dine, giving them
 charge he should be honourably attended at the board. Being set
 among many Lords, he behaved himself gently and mildly to-
 wards all. Dinner being done, the Admiral called unto him a Pe-
 phew of his, named *Salatas*, commanding him to see Valentine as
 well armed at all points as himself, & moreover charged his Pe-
 phew to deliver unto Valentine the best horse in his stable. *Salatas*
 having received this command from his Uncle the Admiral, took
 Valentine and led him into a fair Hall: being come thither, he
 caused to be laid before him divers Armors, willing him to make
 choice of the best: Valentine cast his eyes upon them all, and at
 last appointed the Armor wherewith he would be armed, and ma-
 king himself ready as fast as he could, he approached down into
 the outer Court, whereas he was attended with his Horse ready
 to put his foot into the stirrup. Being come down out of the Hall,
 he presently mounted his Horse, the Admiral issued likewise read-
 dy armed out of his privy Palace. Being thus armed, they took
 their way towards the chief Gate of the City of Rome, for on that
 side King *Pepin* had laid his siege.

When they were both in the field, Valentine hung his shield about his neck, in which he wore a Hart wavy in a field of silver, and on one side of the Hart a Tree, all which did signifie that he was found in a Forrest, and were the same Arms King Pepin bestowed on him. The Champions being entred the Lists, great was the clamour of the French, in joy of Valentine, the sound whereof the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued forth out of the City to behold these Triumphant Jests. The Fryer having plaied his part among the Christians within the City, presently after the Pagans were gone out to behold these Triumphs, addrested himself to take possession of the gates, which having gotten: there was no entrance again to be expected. King Pepin being made acquainted with their purpose, prepared all his men of War ready to reliefe Valentine, if necessity required. Having now all things in readinesse, h hour was at hand that h Jests should begin.



So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they valiantly couched their Spears, & the first course pigged so valiant, that their Spears shivered all in splinters: each Combatant perceiving valour to brandish on the top of his Helm, made out a second course, where Valentine got the better, for with his Spear (charged against the breast of the Admiral) he gave him such a strong blow, that he forced his Spear quite through his body, insomuch that he fell from his Horse stark dead, making a pittiful noyse at his departure, wherefore the Pagans ran suddenly upon Valentine and would have killed him. Valentine perceiving their intent, with a resolute courage put Spurs to his Horse, and with his Sword drawn, violently rushed through the thickest of the Pagans, and slew many of them, as he passed through them. King Pepin also with his Host came up to the aid of Valentine, but he was so hard beset by the Pagans, that he was smitten from off his Horse, which Valentine espying, came up to the rescue of the King, so that he hoisted him again.

The King perceiving himself delivered out of danger, called unto Valentine and said. My Child, thou hast saved my life, which if the Gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the Battel grew so hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City, when they came to the gates, the Christians that were in the City issued on them and placed the Ensigns and Standards of King Pepin on the walls. The Pagans seeing King Pepins Colours displayed upon the walls, betook themselves to flight: in chase of them the Christians followed on so fast, that they shamefully ended their days. In this battel were slain a 1000 Pagans, only by the means of Valentine, who bare himself so valiantly that day, that he was the death of four Horses at the least. And thus by his Promises & City was again restored to the Christians, for which deed, there was great triumph in all Christendom, but especially at Rome, so that all the Inhabitants round about gave everlasting praise to Pepin King of France, and by the general applause of the people, he was sacred Emperor, & Crowned by the Pope. King Pepin did many goodly acts in his time, administering Justice to all. And this hapned in the time of Pope Clement the fourth.



CHAP. XII.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King did shew towards *Valentine*.

King *Pepin* having expelled the Pagans out of Rome, he took his way back again towards Orleance, and being there arrived, he was right joyfully welcomed by *Bertha* his Queen, with her little Son *Charlemain*, and her fair Daughter *Eglantine*, and their joy appeared so much the more, for that *Valentine* whom she loved so dearly, was again returned home in safety. Being some few days rested from his weary labours, the Lady sends for *Valentine*, who accordingly came unto her, and when she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an amorous countenance began thus unto him: *Valentine*, you above all the rest are most welcome, and well ought it so to be, for Fame hath blown forth her Trumper of your Tryumphs, and report says, you were the only Champion, that drove the Pagans out of Rome. *Valentine* replied: Madam, I can hinder no man to speak what pleaseth him, but as for my self, I have done little deserving praise, but it hath pleased the King your Father to do me great honor, even so much as all the days of my life, I am not able to make the least part of recompence: and as he spake these words, *Haufray* and *Henry*, (two men composed all of envy) entred the chamber of *Eglantine*: and seeing him, began thus to speak: *Valentine*, what have you to do here in the Chamber of our Sister? it is no place for such Seraglers as you are, this your boldness is not to be born: no man knows of whom you are: therefore we advise you to be warned, that you attempt not the like again, lest you dearly buy these your presumptions. *Valentine* hearing these words, answered: Wrong me not, for I entred not the Chamber of your Sister to her dishonor. What though I be poor, and not known of whence I am, yet am I not so base, as to offer violence unto one descended from the blood of Kings? And further, I
pro-

Promise and Vow never to come near her Chamber again ; and therewithal departed, leaving the Lady mourning all alone.

Valentine hasted to the Palace to wait upon the King at dinner, where was in presence Haufray and Henry, and the Duke Millain Daugler ; who likewise waited upon the King during dinner-time. Dinner being finished, the King arose and called to Valentine, and in hearing of all his Nobles, he thus began to say : My Lords, here is *Valentine*, that hath well-deserved at our hands ; and that saved my life when I was in danger ; therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good service towards me, I freely give unto him the Earldom of *Clerimont* of *Auvergne*, and when I can bestow more upon him, he shall not be forgotten. Valentine gave him many thanks, saying : that he had heaped upon him more honours then he could any way deserve. Haufray and Henry hearing these words, grew greatly male-content, and at last Henry began to talk with his brother on this manner : This found fellow, I perceive, grows in great favour with the King, and there must be some course taken to crosse his designs, or else our overthrow will shortly follow upon it, for (quoth he) you know well that the King hath no Sons but we two, and one little one (named *Charlemain*) which if our Father dye, may by our furtherance quickly be set beside the Kingdom. Again, it is greatly to be feared, that this *Valentine* will support and uphold him against us. Therefore brother, I think it good to frame some plot against him, to bring him in displeasure with the King, and so far to prosecute our revenge against him, that if it be possible, we will not onely work his down-fall, but life and all. This being effected, we may at our pleasure govern the Realm without contradiction. He having ended his speech, Haufray replied : Let it be as thou hast said : and that we may entrap his life, this shall be our Plot : We will both go to the King, and tell him, that this up-start hath deflowered our Sister, and that we took him in bed with her, which, when the King heareth, will surely put him to death. Being thus resolved, they daily fed their Imaginations with the death of Valentine, while he (working mistrusting) served the King daily in all duty, inasmuch as the Kings love daily increased toward him ; and above all other most desired his company.

Here

Here let us leave off a little, and come to Orson his Brother, who all this while lived in the Forrest, so much feared of all men, that none durst approach nigh the wood. Daily complaints came unto the King from every side, and among the rest it chanced on a day, that a poor man came unto the King all wounded, saying thus unto him: Sir, I am come before you to make a complaint against a Wild-man in the Woods, for one day as I and my wife passed through the Forrest, carrying bread and other victuals, the wild-man came upon us, took it away, and eat it every bit, and more then that, he violently took my wife from me, and constrained her to yield unto his lawless lust. The King hearing out ~~the~~ a poor mans tale, was disposed to make himself merry with his ill fortune, and thereupon asked the poor man this question: Whether griev'd him most, either the taking away his victuals, or his wife: By my faith, said the poor man, at the wrong offered to my Wife. Thou hast rightly said (quoth the King) therefore I command my Treasurer to see restitution made unto thee, for the loss of thy Victuals, but as for thy Wife, thou must bear the burden thereof thy self.

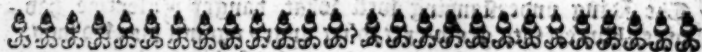
After this the King called all his Barons to assemble and take some order to take this Orson, all which they did, and hereupon a Proclamation was sent unto all parts of the Realm, that whosoever he was, that could take this Wild-man alive, or dead, should have a thousand marks for his reward. Hereupon assembled many worthy Knights to take this task in hand, but the King being one day in his Palace, in the midst of his Nobles, talking and debating who should be appointed to this business, Haufray (enemy unto Valentine) being there, said thus unto the King: Sir, here is Valentine whom you have nourished and advanced to great dignities, and one that hath offered unlawful love to our Sister Eglantine: He were fittest to set forward to try his valour, and let him be employed to fetch in this Wild-man, that is such a terror to the inhabitants: and if by his valour he can vanquish him, then let him have Eglantine in Marriage, which is his desired wish. The King hearing these words of his Son, said: Away, for thy speech favoureth of nothing but envy. What though he be poor, of low birth, and found in a Forrest, yet I find him to me true, and trusty,

trusty, and of Gentile carriage, and to see seemeth to be born of a more noble parentage, than thou art: Leave off these thy malicious and bitter speeches against him, for the behaviour that dwelleth in him, shews that he is descended of some Nobler lineage, then as yet to us appeareth. And I for my part (for the divers virtues that daily are seen in him) am willing that he go to my daughter when ever he please, for I am well assured, that no dishonor can be offered out of a branch of such a generous spirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalf of Valentine, was sore displeased in heart, but setting a good face upon the matter, dissembled his countenance for that time, but it seemed Valentine well observed him, and at last brake forth into these words: *Haufray*, without any cause given on my part, ye have spoken ill of me, and your will it is, that I should undertake the fight and conquest of the Wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my days, and so your revenge be accomplished upon me: well, be it so, here before the King I take a solemn Oath, that I will take the enterprize upon me, and find out the Wild-man, and having found him, I will fight with him, and either bring him alive or dead, or else leave my dead carcass as a witness in the open field. But if I conquer and live, I will never more be seen in this Country, till I have found the Father that begot me, as also, bring to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlock, and how I came to be left an Infant in the Wood.

The King understanding well what danger Valentine had plunged himself into, grew exceeding angry against his two sons, cursing them, for that they were the cause of this dangerous enterprize: for he loved Valentine more than any, and at last, called unto Valentine, and said: My Child, advise you well what you undertake, for with the Wild-man to fight is desperation it self, you cannot be ignorant how many valiant men and worthy Champions, have by him been overcome: and others likewise of valiant account that have forsaken this combat. Therefore I say, let not the evil words of a few malicious men, drive you desperate in losing your life. For my child, it is far better to indure all the bitter words of envy (which is accounted vertue) then to hazard ones life against such a monster, and no man.

Valentine replied, Pardon me (my Liege) for I will never revoke my intended purpose: They call me found brat, which grieveth my very soul, for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what place, but I rest determined, and so I take my leave, for to morrow morning will I set forward to my intended enterprize. Having taken his leave, marvel not though the fair Lady Eglantine made great lamentation for what had happened, but the next morning by break of day, she called one of her Maidens, and said; Go unto Valentine, and bid him to come and speak with me before his departure, bid him fear no danger of life, for I would fain take my leave of him. The Damosel did as the Lady commanded, and when she came to Valentine, she found him mounted on horseback, & she did her Message unto him. He understanding her errand, said unto her, Damosel, I know the love to be great between my Lady Eglantine and me, yet I would not wish her to desire that would turn to her dishonour. But envy is of so great power, that it never leaves them whom it once possesseth. For certain it is, that *Hanfray* and *Henry* (Brethren to your Lady) have at me great and malicious hearts, and will pursue me even unto death (if it be possible) wherefore fair Damosel bear her this answer, which you have heard me tell, and bid her think no evil thereof; and further, that she hold me in excuse, that I refuse to come; and so Farewel.



C H A P. XIII.

How VALENTINE Conquered his Brother ORSON, in the Forrest of Orleans.

NOW is Valentine upon his journey to the Forrest accompanied only with his Page, whither being come, he put his Helmet on his head, and sent him back again. So he rode forth all that day, seeking the Wild-man, but he could not find him, so the night drawing on, he descended from his horse, and tied him

up unto a tree: having so done, he refreshed his body with such victuals as he had brought with him: and when he had eaten & the day shut in, Valentine for fear betook him to the top of a tree, and there abode all that night. In the morning so soon as day appeared he looked round about, & at last espied his Brother Orson running through the Forrest: At length when he came to the place where Valentine had tyed his horse, the Wild-man still drawing nearer unto him, wondering at the beauty of the horse, began to slaw him with his long nails, thinking to rouse up the courage of the horse, for he had never seen the like. The horse feeling the Wild-mans nails scratching his side, began to sting and kick exceedingly, Valentine sitting in the top of a tree, noted the terrible shape of the Wild-man, and began to be afraid, but calling on the Gods, he requested their aid against this Monster. Orson all this while was still busied in beholding this horse, and still offering him such injury with his nails, that the horse did nothing but kick and bite him. When Orson perceived the horse to be too hard for him, he caught fast hold on the horse, that he thought to cast him over, and fight with him. Valentine perceiving his horse in danger to be slain, he cryed out aloud, and said, Wild-man, leave my horse, and stay but till I come down, and with me thou shalt have fighting enough. The Wild-man hearing a strange voice, looked up into the tree, and espying there a man, made unto him divers signs with his hands and head to come down, and he would pull him in peices. Valentine made all the hast he could, drew his sword, and leapt upon the ground close by the Wild-man; when Orson saw the sword, and that he offered to smite him therewith, he leaped and kept him from the stroke, but suddenly returned back again upon Valentine, and thrust him unto the ground. Herein that Valentine was very much discomfited, for he looked for no other than present death in that place, for he felt the strength of the Wild-man so great, that he had no hope of escaping.

Bring thus both grovelling on the ground, Valentine afraid divers times to have gotten Orson under him, but could not, when he saw by strength there was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharp pointed knife, and smote Orson deep into one of his sides, that the blood issued out abundantly. Orson feeling himself

wounded, all enraged, he gave such a stréech, that the Woods echoed again at the sound thereof, but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted Valentine with his sharp nails, that he got him at such an advantage, that he threw him once more upon the earth, where lying they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last, Orson took the shield from about the neck of Valentine and having got it, he beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers colours thereon emblazed: when he had looked his fill, he cast it against the ground, and suddenly returning again to Valentine, with the violence of his nails and teeth, he brake in peeces both the ribs of his Armoz, and his Habergeon also, smiting and beating him so sharply with his nails, that he made the blood follow in all places whereon he laid hold, Valentine feeling himself sore wounded, after some Orisons used to the Gods, he made again upon Orson with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him, but Orson recoyling back, step'd unto a tree hard by, the which tree he pulled up by the roots, and made thereof a club, being thus prepared he made against Valentine, and striking at him, gave him such a blow, that he made him fall upon one knee, Valentine recovering again, laid about him fiercely, so there began again another dangerous fight between the two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the cause of this their fortunes. Orson was so cruel and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed Valentine, had it not been for his sword, for he was sore afraid thereof by reason he had received a wound before by a knife: Long time they fought together in so much as they both grew faint. In which tiredness both standing gazing on each other, Valentine looked wisely upon Orson, and said thus, Wild-man, wherefore dost not thou yield thy self unto me? Here thou livest like a Beast, having no knowledge of humane society. Come thy way with me and I shall make thee know both thy self and others, I will give unto thee food of all sorts, and also cloath thee in apparel fitting humane shape.

Orson understanding by signs that he would his good, fell down upon his knees, and stretched forth his hands towards his Brother, making unto him signs to forgive him, and he would commit himself under his command ever after, and with further signs

promised, that during his life, he would assist him both in body and goods. This happening thus, it was great joy to Valentine, in that he had conquered the Wild-man, which so many Knights durst not meddle withal: for by this onely he had won himself more honour than any Knight that lived in France in those days. All this hard adventure now knitting up in this manner, he took Orson by the hand, and bestowed him by signs, that he should go on before him till they were out of the Wood, for he would not trust him behind, and being out of the Wood, Valentine took off one of his Girts, and bound both his hands fast unto his body, that he should not attempt again to do him any hurt: and in this manner being bound, he mounted on Horse-back, and led the Wild-man with him like a Beast, who never resisted, which was a thing most of all to be wondered at.



CHAP. XIV. Of a Knight of Orlean.

How Valentine having conquered Orson the Wild-man, departed from the Forrest towards Orlean, whereas King Pepin was resident.

Valentine having conquered the Wild-man (as ye have heard) took his way towards Orlean, but you must imagine he could not reach thither in one day, wherefore the day being spent, he determined to lodge at y^e next town or hillage. Being come thither, he thought there to take rest for that night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the Wild-man to come along with Valentine, every man ran into his house, shutting up their doors, and for very fear durst not offer once to look out on him. Valentine perceiving them full of fear, cryed out unto them saying: Open your doors every man, and fear not, for we come onely for lodging; yet for all this, they would not give him succour. At last seeing neither interest nor thankings would prevail, he smote most bitterly that if they would not receive him into their houses, to rest there that night.

night, he would let loose the Wild-man amongst them. Still he
 proceeded to intreat for lodging, but none would give it him. At
 last, as he had threatened, so he did, and letting loose the Wild-man
 he made him signs how he should run against such a Gate, which
 was an Inn, the which he did, wounding a post from out of the earth.
 He ran against the Gate, smiting it open with such violence, that
 they fell off the hooks upon the ground. Valentine seeing the Gate
 opened in this manner, entered the house, and the Wild-man with
 him: But when they within saw their Gate broken down, they
 all locked the house, and ran out at the back door, leaving all to
 Valentine and his beastly Guest. Valentene perceiving them all
 fled, went to the Stable, and set up his horse and dressed him: and
 Orson in the mean time went into the Kitching, where there was
 Capons and divers other provisions of flesh upon a spit roasting at
 the fire. Valentine made signs to Orson, that he should turn
 the spit, but so soon as Orson understood his meaning, he set his
 horny callons upon the meat, and tore it from the spit, devouring
 it as greedily as a ravenous Wolf: when he had torn the meat
 in pieces, he espied a Caldron of water standing by, into which he
 put his head like a Horse, and drank water unmeasurably. Va-
 lentine perceiving him to be a thirst, made signs unto him, that he
 should forsake the water, and he would give him Wine, and there-
 withal took a pot, and led him into the Sellar: when Valentine
 had drawn the pot full of wine, he gave it unto Orson, who set
 it unto his mouth, and casting the liquor found it to be very good,
 drinking so freely thereof, that he drank out all the wine, and af-
 terward thrust the pot against the ground, making a sign unto
 Valentine to draw him more: Valentine fulfilled his signs, and fil-
 led him the pot again, but Orson stopping before his sight a little
 bowl-dish, he put the wine into it, and carried it into the Stable
 to Valentines Horse: But Valentine perceiving that, made signs
 unto him, that his Horse drank nothing but water, yet Orson
 heaved again by signs, that wine was a great deal better than
 water. Many other accidents happened while they were in the
 house, which here we will pass over, for the night was so far
 spent, that rest were fitter for them, than meat. Valentine bidden
 him to supper, making Orson to bear him company (after his
 kind)

kind, but Orson drank so freely of the wine that Valentine gave him, that he became drunk, and in the end got him to the fire, and fell fast asleep. Valentine seeing what had happened, said; Now do I perceive, that there is neither any strength, nor resistance in this wild-man, for if I would I could here suddenly end his days. But in regard he would make a further trial of him, he punched against him with his foot so hard that it awaked him: being awaked, he made signs unto him, that there was people about the house: with that Orson suddenly arose as in a trance, and catching at a great log within the Chimney, he ran against the gate of the house that he made all shake again: at which sudden action, Valentine fell into a great laughter, which Orson perceiving, let all alone, and betook himself to his rest again. Valentine made unto him another sign; that he should fear nothing, for he would be his watch-man, but Orson would not sleep again, but with the log in his arms. And Valentine did as before he had promised unto Orson, and watched all that night, fearing the inhabitants, lest that they should grow into an uprore, for they were so greatly possessed with fear, that they forsook their houses, and ran every one unto the Church, & all that night so tumbled the Bells backward that ere the morning came, all the Village was filled with men of War.

Now the morning being come, Valentine betook him to his horse, leading Orson bound (as he did the day before) towards Orleans, and the next day came to the City.

The Inhabitants of the City perceiving the Wild-man, ran every man into his house, shutting their doors and getting up into their higher rooms, gazing out of their windows. Being entered the City, tidings came to King Pepin, that Valentine had conquered the wild-man: the King hearing hereof, was greatly astonished, and at last said: Valentine, my child, in a happy hour wast thou born, blessed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delivered of thee in the wood, for now I see thou art fortunate, and by thee are we delivered of our fears. Valentine rode through the City of Orleans, till he came at the Palace Gate of the King, and when the Porters saw Orson, they shut the Gates upon them, till Valentine with a loud voice said unto them, fear not



not; but go tell the King, that I will shield him, and all his Court
 from the fury of this Wild-man, for I have made him so tame,
 that he will not hurt any one. The Porters went and told the
 King what Valentine said, who commanded they should enter the
 Palace. Then Valentine took Orson by the hand, and led him in-
 to the Court. When Berna and the fair Eglantine heard that
 the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for
 fear. Valentine went up into the great Hall, where King Pepin
 sat, accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcoming him home:
 amongst the rest Mad Hairy and Henry, who also made great
 sport of him, but in heart wished the Wild-man had been his deary.
 King Pepin and the rest of his Lords gazed on the Wild-man, in-
 so-much as the King said, he is made of a proper mould, fair of fa-
 ce, and though he be hardy tough, yet if he were clothed he
 would become a better sight with the King. Then Valen-
 tine

time said, my Leige, it were requisite he were baptized. It pleased me well (said the King) let it be done: So a Priest was appointed to baptize him: these were his Godfathers, King Pepin and W. Millan, Valentine, and the Dutcheffs of Bourbon: So they called his name Orson. The baptism being solemnized, the King sat him down to dinner, and Valentine waited on his Cup. Then Orson was commanded into the Hall to see his behaviour: and being come, the King beheld him earnestly. Orson seeing the meat, took as much as he could grasp in his hand, and devoured it. Having eaten that, he spied one of the attendants that brought a Peacock to the Table, who coming near unto him snatched away the Peacock, and sat him down and devoured it most greedily. Valentine seeing his behaviour, made signs unto him that he did not well, whereat Orson seemed ashamed; but the King bad let him alone, for he much delighted in his rudeness. Orson having devoured much meat, got a pot of wine and drank it off, throwing the pot to the ground. Night being come, Valentine was appointed to a fair Chamber, and a bed for Orson in the same, but as soon as ever he entered the Chamber, he laid him on the ground, and so fell a sleep.

CHAP. XV.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* took Counsel together, to Murther *Valentine* in the Chamber of *Eglantine*.

Right glad and joyful was the fair Lady *Eglantine*, that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man, inasmuch that she sent him word to bring the Wild-man into her presence. Then Valentine took Orson by the hand, and led him to the chamber of *Eglantine*, where were assembled divers Ladies of honor to behold him, Orson being in a chamber, to a laughing humer leapt upon the bed, there making divers signs unto the Ladies, which highly pleased them, but his meaning they could not understand, at

which they were right sorry. At last Valentine opened unto them his meaning, which was, that he would gladly kiss and play with some of them, wherent they looked one upon another, and began to laugh. While this assembly of the Ladies chanced in the Chamber of Eglantine, Haufray came to Henry and said thus unto him; Brother, you see how the honor and credit of this soundling prince's affect, which much eclipseth our honor, and we must seek some remedy for it. It is true (said Henry) wherefore let us lay some plot to cut him off. Then said Henry, hearken to what I shall say, Valentine is now with our Sister, and we may have fit occasion to kill him in her Chamber, when we have done, we will inform the King that we found him in her bed. According to their determination they put it in execution, and rushed into the Chamber of Eglantine. As soon as Haufray was entered, he roughly thus began with Valentine; Disloyal man, now shalt thou know the price of thy inconstancy, purchasing daily great dishonor unto the King our father, by abusing our sister Eglantine, and leading her affections to work your pleasure on her, insomuch as by thee she is made unfortunate. But such the King hath been told herof, and he regardeth not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take vengeance of thee in our own persons. And Haufray lift up his fist and calling him Traitor, smote Valentine on the face, so that the blood ran out of his mouth: Henry on the other side came to him, and with a glasse thought to have smitten Valentine to the earth. Orson perceiving they were in earnest, leapt out, and gave Haufray such a stroke with his rough hand that he felled him, & after ran to Henry, and girded him so betwixen his arms, that if the Ladies had not been in presence to have appeased his wrath, he had destroyed them both at once.

At this became an outcry in the Chamber, wherent came all the Barons of the Court, to know the cause of this sudden clamor: but when they understood that Orson dealt so violently with Valentine's Sons, they would have killed him with their swords: Valentine perceiving their fury to arise, drew his sword, & swore, that if any of them offered violence to Orson, he would run them thorow. This said, he made a sign to Orson to be still, and so he reposed himself for that time; Haufray and Henry went to their father, making unto him great complaint against Valentine and the wild-
man,

man, saying; Father, in an evil hour was this Valentine born, for he hath brought hither the Wild-man, only to work our overthrow, and if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Royal person. The King hearing this complaint, was exceeding sorry, & gave them this answer, & as for Orson, he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him, and as for Valentine, the King sent for him to demand the cause of this disorder. Valentine being come before the King, began to say on this manner, Dread Sovereign, I was in his Chamber of your Daughter Eglantine, accompanied with divers other Ladies, that desired to see Orson: I know not how nor why your two sons Haufray & Henry, violently entered his chamber, charging me that I had abused the body of your fair Daughter, moreover, in the heat of their violence used against me, Haufray smote me on the face, that the blood issued, and Henry lifting up his Sword, thought to have taken away my life. All which, when Orson saw, he suddenly made towards them, and smote them both to the earth, and therewithal began this uprore. The King hearing this tale, said, And is this true that you have said? Upon my life (said Valentine) all that I have spoken is true. Then said the King, Orson hath done nothing but right, and that which in duty he ought to do. And as for you Haufray and Henry, I see right well that you are even swollen full of malice against Valentine: wherefore I charge you, from hence forth, that you attempt no ill against him, for here I vow, that I would not lose him for the best Baron in my Land, for I have made many tryals of his love and faithfulness towards me; and with this answer Haufray & Henry departed, although sorrowful in heart, that they could not work their wills upon him.

They being gone, Valentine stayed still in the Kings Hall amongst the other Nobles that were there assembled, and Orson went here and there round about the Palace, at last he came unto the Kitchen where the Cooks were making ready supper, and being there, he espied two Capons, ready for the fire. Orson made towards the Capons, and set upon them, eating them up raw like a hungry Dog. The Cook seeing him eat up his Capons, took a Penel lying by him, and gave Orson such a blow

that he made him bow therewith. Orson feeling the blow, stooped down, and took the Cook up between the legs, throwing him down upon the ground, and being down, he so belaboured the poor Cook, that he had well nigh beat him to death. Cyprius was brought unto the King that Orson had slain the Cook, and none durst come near him.

The King hearing hereof, willed him to be brought before him and made signs unto him, that he should be hanged: but Orson ferched the Pestell, and made signs how the Cook had beaten him therewith, wherefore the King commanded that none should offer him any injury. So after that Valentine taught him manners how he should behave himself. And so they both lived quietly in the Court of King Pepin.



CHAP. XVI.

How Duke Savary sent unto the King Pepin for aid against the Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his will.

It chanced that not long after the coming home of Valentine and Orson into the Court of King Pepin, that Duke Savary sent certain Messengers to King Pepin, which said unto him in this manner: Great King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you to request your aid against a false and accursed Pagan (called the Green Knight) who hath defiled his Conscience, and intendeth to have his Daughter by force of arms against his will, notwithstanding all the resistance that he and his three Sons can make against him. The King having heard this Message, made this answer: We agree to give him all the aid we can. We had no sooner given answer unto these Messengers, but there was come unto the Court another Messenger from Lyons, who after his duty done unto the King, said thus unto him. Renowned King, assemble your men of War to readiness, and conduct them, towards Lyons,

Lyons, for the Almains are coming against you in great numbers, their whole force consisting of above a hundred thousand fighting men. The King hearing this sudden news, was much troubled in mind: and presently called before him the Arch-Bishop of Rheims, the Duke Myllon Dangler, Garvais and Sampson, these with others of his Nobles being assembled, he declared what the Messenger had said, and which craved their Counsel what was best to be done, whether to go to Aquitain to succour Duke Savary, or to Lyons, to resist the Almains, whereunto Milon Dangler made this answer: The Duke I confesse deserveth to be succoured, but yet in two extremes, let us chuse the lesse: Therefore I Judge it most meet, first to defend our own Land, that is now in present danger: and for the Duke he must be content to take our present affairs for answer: so generally it was concluded to go for Lyons.

With these words the Messenger that came from the Duke of Savary departed, and carried these tidings with him to Aquitain, which made him very sorrowful to hear it, because the Green Knight had very strongly assailed him. Now here gentle Reader I let you understand, for the better obtaining our proceeding, that this Green Knight here spoken of, was Brother to Ferragus, the Giant that kept the Lady Belysant in his Castle, who was the distressed mother of these two Infants, born in the Wood, called Valentine and Orson, as is before declared. Duke Savary perceiving no hope of aid from King Pepin, made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions, that all, of what condition soever, should be ready armed against the morrow after, for he would then go out upon the Green Knight, and fight with him in the field, all which was accordingly performed. The day appointed being come, both armies met as well Horse as Foot, the Pagans presented themselves in multitudes, & the Green Knight behaved himself so valiantly, that the first encounter, with his Battell-*Ar* at two blows he slew two valiant Knights. Duke Savary perceiving him to be so warlike a General, came up to encounter him, and meeting, they assailed each other, but the Duke was ill-advised to adventure his body against the Green Knight, because he was ever preemphatically reported of him, that he should never be

overcome of any, except he were a Kings Son; and such a one as had never succed the breasts of any woman. But the Green Kt. was herein deceived, for he thought it impossible any such man should be upon the face of the earth: but it fell out contrary to his expectation, as you shall understand. Let us now return to the two valiant leaders, who fought long and fiercely, but the Duke ventured so far into the enemies hands, that when he had thought to have retired, he could not, for he was round begirt with such multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken prisoner, and brought back unto the Green Knight, whose Ransom could not be granted for any Gold or Treasure. His men at Arms perceiving the Duke surprized, returned to Aquitain, sore lamenting the losse of their good Duke. And his three Sons, Garin the elder, Anselme and Garin the yonger, made great moan to see the hard hap of their father, led captive among the Pagans.

The Sons having shewed their sorrows, in comes Fezon his Daughter with this lamenting out-cry, *Alas!* in an ill hour was I born, seeing that so many valiant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered death in my quarrel, and yet there is one thing more troubleth my distempred soul than all the rest, which is this, that my father should be held captive in the hands of his Enemies; the onely way to bring his aged years with sorrow to the Grave. *Alas* (dear father) your love to me is the onely cause of all these disastrous chances. Thus fell Fezon into a dangerous fit of discontent, insomuch, as with this extremitie of sorrow, he had well-nigh finished her days, had not the rest of the Ladies attendant, laboured to comfort her in this great sorrow, wherewith she was almost overcome.

Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with sorrow, the Green Kt. triumphed over the worthy Duke, causing him to be brought before him into his Pavilion, and having him there, began to revile him in this disdainful manner: *Duke, now thou perceivest that thou art my Vassal, and that I have power over thy life; this that I speak thou canst not deny: therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my sacred lips, either give me thy Daughter Fezon to Wife, and so redeem thy life, or else I will have her against thy will, leading her amongst rough Mountains, and there*

there royally Crown her Queen of those craggy Mansions.

The Duke hearing these proud menaces, began thus to reply: Proud and insolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give consent that thou have my Daughter, except thou also subscribe to be baptized. The Green Knight hearing him say so, replied: Urge me no further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet: Wherefore once again I tell thee, except thou yeild to my demand I will first make thee finish thy days miserably, and afterward consume all Aquitain to ashes, and after that put to the Sword all that come in my way, men, women, and children. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus resolute, began again on this manner: Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy cruelty, for I had rather rely on their power then thine. The Green Knight hearing him say so, began wisely to set his eye upon him, & marking his untwonted lamentations, began a fresh with him on this manner: grave Duke, leave off these thy sad laments, and hearken unto my relation and resolution also, and this is so: I am not ashamed to let thee understand, that thy Daughters beauty hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recal my threatened Sentence of Death against thee; Out of which Captivate affections toward thy Daughter, I am forced to yeild to this condition, that thou shalt find out a Knight within the space of six months, to encounter me, and if so it happen that by strength of Arms he conquer me, I vowe by all the Heavens, to send thee back again into thy own country, without wasting any of the same; but if it happen, that I prove conqueror over that Knight, then shalt thou willingly resign thy said Daughter into my hands, to be my lawful wife. These Articles being-produced the Duke willingly agreed thereunto, so the Truce was accordingly proclaimed.

These Agreements thus concluded, the Green Knight gave leave that Duke Sarazny should depart, upon Conditions, that he should sweare to keep covenants, not only for the present, but during his life. The Duke being thus delibered, made his repair to Aquitain, whither being come, he caused open proclamation to be made of those conditions, whereunto he had before subscribed concerning his said Daughter; and withal the Truce taken for the space of six months. His Councellors hearing what was past, advised

bised him to despatch Messengers into all Lands, with these advertisementes following: If there were any Knight whatsoever, that durst encounter the Green Knight, for the love of the beauteous Lady Fezon, he should lay down his gage, and so be answered. These Letters were sent into twelue Christian Lands: what followed you shall better learn by the succeeding Chapter.



CHAP. XVII.

How diuers Knights arrived at *Aquitain*, at a solemn Just there holden, to bear away the Love of the beauteous Lady Fezon.

DURING this time of Truce, between the Duke Savary & the Green Knight, Pepin King of France had taken his journey against his enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mighty Host of men, being come before the City with all his forces, he set upon a King called Lamparris, who had also brought into him 40000 fighting men. This Lamparris was King of Syres, Holland, and Friezland, with the Countrey of Monetaich, in the which stood a very strong defended City, whereunto they withdrew themselves. King Pepin getting knowledge hereof, strongly begert this City with a siege, insomuch that at last they were constrained to yield, or suffer famishment, but resolving upon the safety of their lives, they yielded their City, which City the King bestowed upon Gay Marbrial of France. The wars being ended, Pepin returned again into France, with all his warlike Souldiers. Being arrived at Paris, it was told him, that Duke Savary had taken truce with the Green Knight, and the manner how, whereat the King laughing heartily, said in the presence of his Barons: who is he amongst you that would win fair Fezon for his Love, must take upon him a Combat against the Green Knight, whom if he conquer and overcome, the Duke will not onely give him his Daughter, but one half of his possessions: and that this is true, behold Letters here written

written with his own hand. Every one of these worthy Knights
 sight diligently beuold these Letters, yet none of them durst un-
 derstande & enterprize, save onely Valentine, who perceiuing them
 all refuse it, said thus unto the King: Right dear Sovereign, if it
 please you to giue me leave, I will adventure my strength upon
 that Green Knight, and will gladly undertake the task commie-
 ted. Again I haue a great desire to leaue France, for I long to
 take in hand some tedious journey, to find out the Mother that
 bear me, and from whence I am descended. Valentine (said the
 King) take thou no care of whence thou art, for it resteth in my
 power to make thee greater than any man within my Court, and
 for that I am thee willing to go to Aquitain. I freely giue thee
 leave, but on condition, that after thou hast tryed thy Manhood
 with the Green Knight, thou return again, if thou escape with
 life. Valentine yielded to the King in his demand, and so taking
 leave, he shortly after prepared to his journey.

When Eglantine heard that Valentine would go into Aquitain,
 she was very sorrowful, and at last in the midst of tears sent for
 Valentine to come unto her. Valentine promised the Messenger
 to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed, and being
 come, she burst forth into tears, saying: Ah Valentine now I do
 well perceiue that all my joys are at an end, and that you are re-
 solved to leaue this Country of France. Ah, would to God it
 might be my good hap to go with you, for there is not a man li-
 ving, whom I hold so dear as you, and (were not I curbed by my
 high birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou
 mayest the better perceiue my true intent, take thou here the
 keys of all my Treasure, and take what please thee, for there is
 great store, and the Gods giue thee succour in all thy Nightly
 enterprizes.

Then (quoth he) tell me and I will see none, but that which
 most of all bestempereth my mind: Which is, that I cannot
 learn of my descent. Wherefore, one thing more troubleth me as
 much as the other, which is that I hear upon one of my should-
 ers a Cross, and it is of the colour of most pure Gold, of which
 I know not what to gather, but would faine see it, never to rest
 in my place, until such time as I haue found out the truth of my

Pativity, and so lovely a Lady, I take my leave, earnestly request-
ing you to stop the current of these British tears: and withal I
bow, that if I finde my birth answerable to the Majesty from
whence you are descended, to take you as my only choice to Wife,
forsaking all other. On the other side, having found out my birth,
and perceiving it not answerable to yours, I would not be your
Husband for all the wealth in the world. For malicious tongues
in time to come will say, where are the Brethren, Sisters, or Co-
zens of this runnagate, that hath presumed to match himself unto
the Daughter of our mighty King Pepin? having spoken all these
words, he departed, leaving Elantine full of grief. But when
he had some little time sat still, he could not be satisfied, but of-
fered to follow him whithersoever he went, and in conclusion
brought him on some part of his way, being accompanied with
divers of the Nobility. Valentine being departed, Haufray and
Henry were right glad heresof, privily conspiring how to bring it
to pass, that Valentine and his Brother Orson (who went along
with him) might by treacherous villany come unto an untimely
death.



CHAP. XVIII.

How Haufray and Henry accompanied with a Troop of
their Confederates, lay in Ambush to take away
the life of Valentine.

Valentine and Orson having taken their leave of King Pepin,
addressed themselves for Aquitain. Being on their way
Haufray and Henry consulted together (joyning to their aid a
third, who was Chosen to them both) how they might lye in Am-
bush to set upon Valentine and Orson, to work their destruction:
which number was about thirty strong able men. This plot
being thus come to perfection: charge was given to these
like men, that if they could not overcome Valentine and his
ther

ther Orson to death, yet they should lay hold on Valentine, and keep him safe. The place appointed wherein this should be done, was a very large and great forrest, through which Valentine must needs pass. Not long after the ambush was pitched, it so chanced, that Valentine came riding along the forrest with Orson running by his side, swifter then any horse, who coming near the place where these armed men lay, forth steps their Captain (called Grygar) accompanied with all his Troop, with their weapons drawn, thinking to have surprized Valentine on the sudden, and to have put him to death: Now this fierce Traitor lent him such a mortal blow, that his sword passed quite through his Armour, and entered into his flesh, insomuch as the blood followed the blow, and withal, uttered forth these unwelcome words: *Valentine,*



either yield thy self Captive, or receive thy Death: Valentine, as a man all amazed, was sometime moved at the sight of his wound, blood,

blood, and considering how he was incompassed with a multitude of his enemies, recommending his innocency unto the Gods, and at last spoke on this manner : My Lords (speaking to Haufray and Henry) I see well that you have determined my days by Treason, and that without cause on my part given, but yet I assure you, that before I yeild my self into your hands, or before this days Sun be set, I shall send some of you here present into such a Country; that you shall scarcely ever return again to bring tydings of your valour. And herewithal drew forth his sword, and gave the first that encountred him such a blow upon the head, that he clabe it even to his teeth, and there lay he dead; After that he betook him towards the rest, with such violence, that at every stroke one fell before him.

Orson perceiving his Brother thus to lay about him, began to rouse himself, and with his rough hands and peirring talions, he rent and tore all that came in his way, and so bit them with his teeth, that they fell grobeling unto the ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his feet. Valentine seeing his brother Orson thus bestir himself, help up his bloody sword, defending himself, and offending his enemies so valiantly, that they all forsook them, and durst not stay within their sight : Grygar their Captain, perceiving all his men thus pittifully killed and overcame, cryed out with a loud voice on this manner. *Valentine*, yet I wish thee yeild, or else look for nothing but death. Valentine hearing these insulting words, made toward Grygar, and in a fierce and furious manner assailed him : but being too forward he plunged himself into the throng, that he was enclosed round about, keeping off Orson with their long spears. Being thus begirt about with enemies, he stil behaved himself so valiantly, that not any man durst lay hold upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was overcome with multitudes, and being not able longer to wield his sword, they took him, bound him, & carry'd him away with strang hands. Orson perceiving his Brother thus posted away, ran after, making a hideous noise; but he could not overtake them, for they rid away swifter than he could run, & having at last lost the sight of them, knew not which way he were best to take after. Grygar the Captain com-
manded

manded them to follow after Orson, & to bring him back, either alive or dead; but in vain they followed, for he out-ran them, & so escaped. Those that had the charge of Valentine, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of a Forrest, kept by a notable Thiel, who was couzen German to Grygar; Valentine being entred the Castle Gate, they entreated him evilly, conveyed him to a deep Dungeon, which grieved him to the heart, insomuch that his grief brast out into these words: Alas, now is that come upon me, which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadliest enemies, and of those that have ever sought my life and utter destruction. Farewel Noble King Pepin, for I fear I shall never see thee more, and that which most of all vexeth me, that thou shalt never understand the truth of my death, for the very stench of this ugly Dungeon, doth even stop my breath. Farewel Orson too, for thou hast already suffered death for my sake, and more could no man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my natural Brother. Farewel my sweet Mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my hopes are all frustrated, for now I must dye, without the knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus Valentine lamented in the dark pit, whilst his enemies determined what should be done to him. Some were of opinion to put him to death, others, that he should be committed to a perpetual imprisonment. But Grygar being Lord over the rest, would not yeild he should be put to death, but rather to keep him in prison till Haufray and Henry have received knowledge of all their proceedings. Having thus set down their resolution, they determined to take their journey towards Paris, where the King then lay, to meet with Haufray and Henry, who entertained them Royally, being right glad that Valentine was fallen into their hands by treason. Now understand, that Orson all that night was laid to rest within the Cell, lying down at the foot of a Tree. The morning being come, he took on his way towards Paris also, never resting till he came into the presence of King Pepin: being come thither, by signs and tokens he showed the manner of his taking of Valentine, but yet for all the haste he made, Grygar was arrived at the Court before him. Haufray and Henry were much grieved that Orson had escaped, but all their care

lost was he could not speak, thinking thereby to escape from all mistrust; but their hopes were all laid in the dust, as hereafter will appear.

The next day the two Brethren had appointed that Grygar should return in all haste to the Castle, to put Valentine to death: but he told it came about, that all their counsels were quite overthrow; for Orson (as before is said) came unto the Kings Palace that morning, and growing towards Dinner time, the Tables being all prepared, the King, accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons, and Knights, came in, and every man took his place. The King being set, and casting his eyes abroad, suddenly espied Orson; whom when he beheld, he thought by him that Valentine was not far off, but it fell out contrary. Orson ran through the hall, making a lamentable noise, and knocking his breast in most hideous and fearful manner, which drove the King into ten thousand fears, and all the rest who beheld this lamentable spectacle. Orson ran again along by the Table, looking very fiercely on every man, and making many fearful signs. Amongst the rest, at the last he lighted upon the Traitor Grygar, who espying Orson, hung his head in his bosom. Orson having once got the sight of him, ran furiously upon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroke, that he smote off one of his eyes. After he began to lay upon his face, in so much, that he put out one of his eyes, and broke one of his teeth. Grygar being thus wounded, began to cry out for help, but Orson hearing him make such an uproar, ran again upon him, and gave him such another stroke, that he felled him unto the earth, overthrowing tables, meat, and all that stood before him, which drove all the beholders into admiration, and had he not been rescued by a valiant Prince that then sat at Board, he had never gone from that place alive: which Prince having rescued him, began to say unto the King on this manner: Mighty King, consider into what danger this man is fallen by the fury of this wild-man: and either let him dye for this presumptuous fact, or no man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so: replied, we will consider the cause; and as we find it, so will we proceed against him. Bring him hither before us, that we may question the cause of this his fact. Orson was brought before the King, and he demand-

ed how he durst presume so far into the presence of his Majesty & Orson presently answered by signs, how that they had slain Valentine in the Forrest, and that he would be revenged for his death, on that inhumane Traitor Grygar, and withal closed his fist, and put it to his mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. King Pepin perceiving by his action, the course of the matter, called forth unto all the Lords and Barons on this manner: My Lords, you see as well as I, that this wild-man hath challenged Grygar, to fight with him: therefore tell me your opinions what is best to be done in this case, for I cannot chuse but marvel, why this wild-man should find out Grygar above all the rest of the Knights here assembled: therefore let every man freely speak, for I much doubt some hidden secret to lye herein, and for my part, I could willingly give consent, that it should be tryed forth by Combate between them. When the King had thus uttered what he thought, the Barons agreed to the verdict that the King had passed. So the battel was determined, and Grygar was brought before the King, to the intent he should undergo the Challenge against the Wild-man: Grygar hearing what the King had determined, was very fearful and sad, and not without cause: for he foresaw hereby, that his treason would come to light, and therewithal cast an ill-favoured eye on Haufray. Henry perceiving Grygar stand so amazed, said, Grygar, fear not, for I promise thee however it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will work your peace assuredly, so that thou wilt swear never to reveal the fact, yea, (quoth Grygar) I well perceive how the case will go with me, I must suffer a reproachful death for your sake: Having thus said, he left Henry, and returned unto the King, saying: Mighty King, let me make one request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous task, the reason chiefly moving me, is, that insomuch that it is not man against man, whereby a Knight may win honor, but a wild savage to encounter with man, and that man no Knight. I think I may safely (so your Grace be pleased) refuse the Combate. Nay (quoth the King), no excuse in this case can be admitted, for the Combate is granted, not onely by my advice, but also by the counsel of all my Barons, and the reason moving us to grant it, was, that treason long lying hid might come

come to light : Grygar hearing it thus concluded on, grew more into despair, but Haufray being there present, comforted him again on this manner: Doubt not, for you have equity on your part : and besides, I will see you well armed in all points, sitting your Knightly race.

When Orson gathered by his wonted signes, that he should fight with this Traitor, he was right glad, and wishal made shew unto the King, Valentine was dead, whereat the King grew wondrous sad, and said would Orson have been upon the back of Grygar, but that the King commanded him to be taken away, making signs unto him that he should strike no more, till the time they should meet for the tryal of the truth. Again, the King called unto Grygar, to make haste to Arm himself : Grygar loth to venture his life upon so uncertain ground, began once again to speak unto the King, saying : Most dread Sovereign, I have been a long Servitor about your person, both in war and peace, but you reward me not accordingly ; inasmuch as you compel me to fight against a man, that hath neither sense, reason, nor in truth, humane shape. Grygar (said the King) if the right be on your side, you need not fear ; for you shall enter into the field well armed, and as for Orson, he shall adventure upon thee altogether unarmed. Again, you shall be well mounted on Horse back, he on foot, nor shall he bear any weapon. The right you say is on your side, wherefore maintain that right, and shew your valor, for the sentence of Combat may not be recalled.



CAAP. XIX.

How Orson and Grygar fought together, and how Orson returning Victor, caused Grygar to confess the Treason, who was after hanged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon.

The place of Combat being appointed, Orson attended in a readiness for his enemy : in the end Grygar being well armed by Haufray and Henry, took his leave of them on this wise : My Lords, in your cause I am delivered over to death, evil was the day

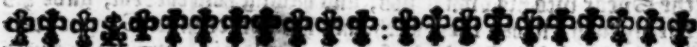
day wherein I began this enterprize. Hold thy peace (said Henry) for I will defend thee from the sentence of my Father, and work thy safety, so thou wilt be secret?

Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted on his Horse, went towards the Palace Gate, where this Combate was to be effected; the Hour being come, the King repaired to the window to behold the Combate; All the Nobles in the Court being assembled, the Judges were appointed, that no wrong should be offered on either part. So Grygar being entred the Lists, he espied Orson, and began to draw near unto him, saying:

Villain, thou hast offered me great wrong in putting out one of my eyes, but ere I part I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me to the King. Orson perceiving whereunto his proud speeches tended, he wed him his nails, gnashing his teeth together at him: whereat Grygar suddenly couched his Spear within his rest, and ran upon him. Orson espying the Spear bent against him, gave back, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his mark, and ran his Spear fast into the ground; Orson taking this advantage, suddenly returned back again, seized the Spear into his own hands, and having hold thereof, gave his enemy such a stroak therewith, that he wounded him. Grygar feeling the fury of his stroak, set spurs to his Horse, and rid like a mad man about the field: Orson ran after him with a grinning countenance, making signs to the King, that he would ere long force him to yeild unto him. Grygar fearing the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himself murmured out these words: Ah Haufray, for thy cause and sake am I thus delivered over to death. Long and tedious was the fight, but Grygar could never so much as wound the Wild-man.

At last Orson cast away the Spear, and came close to Grygar, in such manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the Neck, making him so mad and furious that he overthrew his rider to the earth, and with the fall thereof he lost his Shield. Orson espying the Shield, took it up, and put it upon his own back; after he came unto Grygars Horse and gat upon him, riding round about the field, and making ill favoured signs and tokens, insomuch, as all the beholders there present, stood as men dumb. Amongst
the

the rest, the King himself appeared very sorrowful, and at last began thus to speak: My Lords, I know not what to think hereof, neither can I yet perceive whereunto this fight will grow, but it is my opinion, that there is treason smothered, and not yet come to light. Orson having now a great while ranged about the field on horseback after his enemy, at last forsook his horse, and encountered Grygar on foot, insomuch that he lent him such a blow that he smote him to the earth, afterward he leaped upon him, and disarmed him of his weapons: then the next blow he struck he smote off one of his arms: next on the body he gave him such a wound, that it cut him even to the reins of the back. Grygar having received all these wounds cryed out most pitiously, insomuch that every one requested he might have a Priest to confess him of his sins. The guard that was appointed for the field, hearing these out-cries, sent out a worthy Knight to demand what he would have done, unto whom Grygar said, Sir, bring me before the Kings Majesty, and before him and the rest of his assembly I shall reveal the Treasons whereof I am guilty, from point to point, effectually.



CHAP. XX.

How Grygar being vanquished by Orson, confessed his Treason to King Pepin; and how Haufray and Henry had been only plotters thereof, against the worthy Valentine.

A Last Grygar was brought before the King, who asked pardon for his high offence, and in the presence of all the beholders, told him, that the onely actors in this Treasonous Plot, were Haufray and Henry his Sons, and by their means he had taken Valentine and put him in prison, and there meaning (in secret manner) to have put him to death. The King having heard out his Tale, and perceiving the whole truth of this Plot against Valentine, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next Tree he came unto. The King having thus given sentence against

against Grygar, called for his Horse, and being mounted, made all haste possible unto the Prison where Valentine lay. Orson perceiving the King in person would undertake such a journey, adressed himself to run along by the Kings Horse, leading him the way, and making many signs of joy and gladness all the way he went. The King marking well all the wild-mans behavior, often spake unto his Lords on this manner: My Lords, it is wonderful that this Wild-man should bear such an ardent affection towards Valentine, and besides, it strikes me into a thousand imaginations. Now you must know, that the King had great cause even to love this Wild-man, for that he was his natural Nephew, though as yet not revealed, neither was the time yet come to bring it to light, till that by Clerimond (sister unto the Giant Ferragus) it should be made manifest: for at that time Clerimond had a Cattle, and in it a Head of Brals, composed by PEGROMANCY, which head told unto Clerimond all that should happen unto her all her life: and also, all that ever she had done in her fore-passed time. Besides, this same Head was composed by such wondrous Magical Art, that it should never leave off speaking, until the noblest Knight in the world should enter the Castle, and then the head utterly to give over, and never to speak more.

This Magical Spell, fell out upon Valentine, whom that fair Lady Clerimond shall take to Husband, and for whom he shall endure a world of miseries, as (God willing) in the succeeding History you shall understand. So leave we this, and return back again to King Pepin, where before we left him. King Pepin goeth on his Journey towards the Forrest to save the life of Valentine, and Orson being with him, brought him unto the very Castle wherein he was clapt up. Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the King, barred the Gates, for so they were commanded by the residue within the Castle, upon pain of life. The King perceiving he could not enter in peace, commanded his Attendants to enter by force, and so they did. Being gotten within the Castle, they seized upon all the scditionous Traitors, and bound them fast in chains, having so done, they went into the Dungeon, where Valentine lay bound, and brought him forth unto the King. Valentine meeting his King, fell upon his knees, yielding him thanks

hands of chands, for that extraordinary kindness he owed to him, in delivering him out of a hell of darkness and fear of death. The Barons also that attended the King, welcomed him with great joy and gladness, telling to him all that had happened, & how that Orson had fought with the Traytor Grygar in his quarrel, and overcome him: Valentine hearing thereof embraced Orson. Afterward, the King commanded that all 4 Traytors should be led into the wood, and there hanged; and after spake thus unto Valentine, Valentine, seeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculously delivered out of the hands of thine enemies, I would advise thee to abide with me: but he replied, Dread Sovereign, pardon me, for I will never return again, till I have found out the Parents of whence I am descended: and so humbly take I leave of your Majesty, and ever rest (only this excepted) at your command and service. So here leave we King Pepin, and onely look upon Valentine and Orson, who are taking their way towards Aquitaine, to fight with the Green Knight, a man feared of all men: for I must call to remembrance that of which I told you before, that he should never be vanquished by any, save only by a Kings son that never loved woman. Being come to Aquitaine, the people flock'd from all parts, to behold the rough & unmanly shape of Orson: but Valentine seeing their folly, made him a Jacket of steel to put upon him; when Orson had it on his back, he was much offended thereat, and would have thrown it away, but that he much feared Valentine, and would do any thing that he commanded.

Orson having his new Jacket upon his back, looked much upon himself, and at last became proud thereof, and set his countenance according to his heart. So as they were riding on their way, Valentine espied a fair Squire, making much lamentation. Valentine beholding him well, said thus unto him: Friend, what ayleth you to shed these tears? Have you sustained any wrong either by man or beast? Tell me what may be the cause, and I promise you the best of my power, to releive your distressed case? Alas (said the Squire) thereof I make no doubt, but know this, that the cause of my laments, is the loss of a most kind and gentle Master, and a man of the greatest valor in Christendom. How have you lost him (quoth Valentine?) Sir, as he was travelling

towards *Aquitain*, to fight with the Green Knight, thinking thereby to win the fairest Lady in the world (called *Fezon*) which Lady it is not possible for any one to have, except first he overcome in single Combate the Green Knight. Divers valiant Knights have there miscarried: and when he conquereth them, he caueth them to be hanged on a Tree: and the number that are already dead, are thirty two, yielding no shew of mercy towards any. Is all this true (quoth Valentine) that thou hast told me? Why then sure he is some devil in mans shaps, that doth such strange exploits: But towards *Aquitain* am I journeying, to try my fortune against him, for I have heard much of that Lady *Fezon*. His sir (quoth the Squire) go not thither, to lose your life on such a Devil. Squire (saith Valentine) I will go forward, and mean to cope with that famous Green Knight: but if I can escape him, I will first talk with the Lady *Fezon*, and take her advertisement.

Orson gathering some understanding of their talk, made signe unto Valentine that he might fight with the Green knight, & that he would make love to the Lady *Fezon*: wherat Valentine laughen heartily. By this time think them to be come near to the City of *Aquitain*, standing upon a Hill, and meeting with an Old man, he questioned with him, what City that was before him. Marry (quoth he) it is *Aquitain*. Now tell me (saith Valentine) where resteth the Green Knight? Why sir (saith he) without the City, I think you are going to fight with him. I (quoth Valentine.) Ah Sir (saith the old man) undertake not so foul a folly, for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither my Son, and stand thou on this little hill, and I shall shew thee above forty famous Knights hanging on a Tree, whom he hath overcome. Also, there is now but fifteen days to be accomplished, and then the Duke of *Aquitain* must part with his fair Daughter *Fezon*, to his great grief, and the overthrow of the whole Kingdom. Father (quoth Valentine) the Gods defend her. He had no sooner spoke those words, but there came another ancient man of fourscore years of age in the habit of a Pilgrim. This man was that Blandiman, Squire to the distressed Bellysant, and he it was that led his Lady Bellysant into the Castle of Ferragus the Giant, as before we have declared; Valentine espying him, demanded of him

whence he was, and whence he came? Sir, quoth the Pilgrim, from *Constantinople*, but I could not enter into the City, by reason of a Pagan Soldan had begun it with a siege, neither could I come to deliver the Message on which I was sent, wherefore I thought it my safest course to return. Pilgrim (quoth Valentine) what thinkest thou of the Green Knight, is it not possible he should be overcome? No (saith the Pilgrim, and I advise you not to follow the enterprize:) for if there were a whole hundred of you, he would see the end of you all. Father, whither go you, saith Valentine? Sir I take my readiest way to *Paris*, for I have a Message to King *Pepin*, from a Sister of his named *Belysair*, that long hath been banished from *Constantinople* wrongfully, and now is the good Lady in the house of a Gyant, that keepeth her, and useth her honorably, intending to know King *Pepin*'s mind, whether he be consenting to these wrongs done unto her, for well he knoweth she is a vertuous Lady, and for her sake offereth to put himself in single Combat with the Emperor of *Greece*, for that he hath so wrongfully banished her. Palmer (quoth Valentine) I pray thee return back again with me to *Aquitain*, for thither am I going to fight with the Green Knight: If the Gods give me victory against him, I will accompany thee into *France*, for I shall tell thee, only for the love I bear unto King *Pepin*, undertake this fight, for he hath been the means of my preservation, and as a Father unto me. Therefore to him I dedicate all my labors, and rest wholly at his command. Sir (quoth Blandiman) to this motion I will never consent, for my Lady hath put me in trust to dispatch her affairs, and I will discharge the duty of a trusty servant towards her, and so taking my leave, I commend you to the protection of the Gods: The Palmer being gone, Valentine looked long after him, and not without cause, but he wist not why, for this was the man that had been a part of his Mothers exiles. Well, Valentine also took on his journey, and after some few days, came near to the City of *Aquitain*. Valentine beheld the City very earnestly, and passing on, he espied a pleasant Fountain, thither he went and alighting from his Horse, laid him down under a tree, to refresh his tired limbs, and Orson was his Keeper all the while he slept: Anon he awaked and prepared himself to take Horse again, but suddenly there

there arrived at the same fountain, a couragious Knight, proud, and of so haughty a stomack, that he was stiled the proud Knight, and withal so fierce and resolute, that he never all the days of his life asked question of any man, yet if he whom he met saluted him not, he presently killed him. This proud Knight came to the fountain, and Valentine beholding him, said never a word, and Orson also gazed fiercely upon him. The proud Knight was angered in his heart, and approached near unto Orson, and gave him such a blow that the blood issued out of his mouth; Orson feeling the blow smart, suddenly took him and threw him to the earth under him, and presently espying a knife at the Knights girdle, smote him therewith into the body so deep, that he was nothing but blood. The Knight feeling himself wounded, cryed out aloud, whereupon Valentine coming in, rescued the Knight out of Orsons hands, and said: Fair Knight, you have offered great wrong to smite a poor Wild-man on this rude manner, who can speak never a word: with that the Proud Knight began thus roughly to answer Valentine: Proud Miscreant, why then dost not thou salute me? and therewith drew forth a Glave, thinking to have smitten him; Valentine seeing the blow, drew forth his sword, and strook at the Proud Knight with such violence, that he strook him in a manner dead, and said unto him: Hereafter learn thou to salute men in more friendly manner. The Proud Knight being dead, his men fled with all the haste they could unto the City of Aquitain, bearing tydings of their Masters death. Duke Savary hearing thereof was greatly displeased, for he was his Cozen. Amongst the rest, Valentine understood of the lamentation that was made for the death of the Proud Knight besides the fountain: whereupon he suddenly mounted on horse-back, and entered the City, where he lodg'd in a Burgesles house of the same City, whereby it came to the ears of Duke Savary, that he had slain his Cozen: And the Duke commanded that Valentine and his brother Orson should be brought before him: so being come into the presence of the Duke, he began on this manner: Friends (quoth he) of whence are you? What Prince do you serve? And whether be ye Knights or no? Sir (said Valentine) I am a Knight, and owe my duty and service to the famous King Pepin of France. Then said the

the Duke unto him, You have slain my Cozen : 'tis true (saith Valentine) and so I should have done had it been my own Kinsman, for he was so high of stomach that he disdained to speak to any man, and smote so furiously at my Companion, that he had near hand killed him : which I perceiving, drew forth my sword and slew him. Fair Duke, know this, I am a stranger in this City, and hither am I come to Combate with the Green Knight : as also to behold that beautilous Lady *Faxon*, whom the whole world admires : Wherefore I think it a Law of equity, for strangers to pass up and down in safety : consider I have shewed you the cause of my coming : When the Duke heard Valentine say so, he said unto him : Knight, right well hast thou answered me, and seeing my Cozen hath come by this, more by Pride, than Courage, I am right sorrowful, and so I pass it over, and pardon the deed. But in that you urge, that your coming hither was only to Combate the Green Knight : come you into my Palace : and there you shall behold the beauty for which you thus far adventured. Moreover, that you may see you are not come alone, you shall behold fifteen Knights to accompany you, and new arrived for the love of the Lady *Faxon*, and to try their valour against the said Green Knight, their Enemy. Go, I say, to my Palace, and salute my Daughter, as my custom is to strangers, before they adventure their persons in battel with the Green Knight, and having presented your selves before her in the sign of love, you shall receive from her a Ring of Gold.

Sir, quoth (Valentine) I shall be ready to do all Rights and Customs belonging to this place, and besides, will obey you in all things whatsoever it shall please you to command me. This conference ended, the Duke went into the Castle, accompanied with Valentine and Orson. Having sitten the Hall where the Knights were assembled, Valentine beheld the Lady sitting amongst them, and making his way unto her, with all duty and reverence, at last he shuted her thus : Lady, you whose beauty and fame is bruited through the world, the Gods preserve thee from the Green Knight, who I dare boldly avouch is not worthy to touch your superexcellent lips. Moreover, dear Lady, may it please you to understand, that *Pepin* the mighty King of France hath sent us hither

ther to present unto you the most valiantest man that liueth on
earth, wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no man,
nor any weapon, albeit he cannot speak: wherefore assure you,
that the Green Knight is not able to withstand his mighty force,
nor make any resistance against him. Sir (quoth the Lady) I yield
unto the King of France thousands of thanks, as also to you that
have taken such pains to present such an one before me: But say,
wherefore is this worthy Champion no better clothed, for me
thinks he is of an excellent presence, well formed, straight, and of
a hardy countenance: and if he were washed and bashed in some
excellent liquor his flesh would be both white and soft. Lady (quoth
Valentine) he never wore garment till it was very lately, and then
I caused this Jacket, you see him wear, to be made fitting to his
body: Moreover I assure you, that when he came first to Paris he
came like a Wild Savage, and naked man, and his flesh was so hard
that he neither feared wind nor cold. While he was speaking these
words, Perch beheld Orson very wisely, for she was in love with
him in her heart: But yet Valentine began again thus to speak
unto her, Lady, for my self I must say something also, therefore
know this, that onely for the love of you, have I adventured my
self in this Climate, to see if fortune will so much favour me, that
I may bear you away from all commers, by force of Arms: and
yet fair Lady, one thing more have I to utter to you, which is,
that I have made an Oath unto my self, that I will never return
again into France, till I have proved my fortune on the Green
Knight, and with him do I intend to cope Before I part hence,
and either deliver him over into your hands as conquered: or
suffer death, as many more before me have led the way. Alas
Knight, said the Lady, put not your self in danger for my sake, for
me thinks it is folly in any man to endanger himself for the good
of another: again, there be many valiant Knights have miscar-
ried in seeking my love, and I the unhappiest living, to see these
unfortunate days. Lady, quoth he, what I have vowed, I mean to
accomplish: Why then, fair Knight, God be thy speed, and
therewithal desir the Rings of Gold, giving Valentine
the one, and Orson the other, also they sat down at the Table
amongst the other Knights, and were solacement both great
feast.

feastings. Being set at the Table, Fezon still fixed her eye most on Orson, and Orson upon her, as it were interchangeable glancing love-looks one to the other, with exceeding gracious aspects. Now, in the midst of all these feastings, the Green Knight (as his custom was) came thundring at the Gates, only to have a sight of the beautiful Lady Fezon, for you shall understand, that such were the conditions between him and the Duke Savary, that every day it should be lawful for him to enter his Palace, to behold the Lady, without contradiction. Being entered the great Hall, his manner was, to cry out with a loud voice, saying, Valiant Duke of Aquitaine, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me for the love of this Lady? The Duke answered, yea, I have yet within my Palace, sixteen valiant Knights that mean to try their fortunes upon thee, before they part my Countrey. Then said the Green Knight, Let me see them, and likewise the fair Lady Fezon; Enter, said the Duke, for you have free liberty. Herewithal the Green Knight entered the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights one after another, at last, when he had gone through them all, he began to speak to them on this manner: Lords eat and drink, and make merry, for tomorrow day shall be your last, and know that it will fall out to all your shares to be hanged on the top of my Tree, as many before you have been served.

Valentine well-marking his high words, grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him; Proud Knight, these vaunts might well have been smothered within thy breast, for I tell thee, this day is come hither a Knight that shall hold thee rack more then any that ever yet encountered thee, and whereas thou triumphantly hast conquered many, he it is shall vanquish thee, and leave thy dead corpse a pray for ravenous beasts. Now Orson understood that Valentine spoke all this of him, and also knew this to be the Green Knight, by whom so many valiant men had lost their lives; insomuch that he started him with a fierce visage, and forgetting his teeth, leapt from the Table, and taking the Green Knight by the middle, thrust him upon his neck, as if it had been a little child, and having him at that advantage, ripping a collar, the Green Knight with such violence against the Gate, that all the beholders thought he had utterly broken his neck, for he lay as

dead, and so fate him down again at the Table as before; and in a laughing gesture made signs, that he would bear upon his neck three such as the Green Knight.

At this sudden action of Orson, all the Knights there assembled began to laugh, and turning one towards another, said, Now is he come indeed that shall be the overthrow of the Green Knight, but yet we cannot chuse but lament the woful chance that shall befall the Lady *Feron*, for he cannot speak, and yet is worthy all honour amongst the valiantest. The Lady on the other side, beholding his valor, was instantly overcome with the love of Orson, that only he conquered her heart, and left all the rest hopeless of ever gaining the garland at which they aimed. By this time the Green Knight was again recovered, and counting it a deed of courage, began thus to say in the aforesaid presence; Lords, this Wild-man hath deceived my trust, for he came upon me unawares, without saying any word, but I think good to let you understand, that in the morning I shall be better provided, and to the end I may make him an example to all that ever went before, I will ordain for him a Gibbet of purpose higher and stronger than for any that have been vanquished by me: and thereon will I hang his beastly corps, for Beasts and Birds to make their prey.

CHAP. XXI.

How Orson encountered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof; also how Valentine attempted to fight with him, and was slain by him; but could not overcome him.

Orson perceived the Green Knight displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to chatter with his lips, making signs that he would meet him on the morrow and fight with him, and in token thereof, took off his hat, and threw it on the ground as his duty, with Valentine seeing, gave thus to the Green Knight:

Sir, the Wild-man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath thrown down his Gage, whereof if your Stomack serve, I advise you to take it up. Hereat the Green Knight fretted so exceedingly, that he replied never a word. Duke Savary being present, said unto him Sir Knight, I well perceive that the battle will grow strong between the Wild-man and you, and I think that he will hold you tough play, wherefore if you chance to conquer him also, you may well report of your valour throughout the world, for he hath tryed some part of his courage already, and in vanquishing him, you need not stand in fear of any. The Green Knight hereat more and more enraged, swore by all his Gods, that ere the morrow Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his strength, for he should never return again from the field, but be hanged a great deal higher than any of the rest: and with these words left the Castle, and betook him to his Pavillion.

He being departed, the rest of the Knights still remained with the Lady Fezon, making great joy, and saying one to another, that the day was come, that the Green Knight should meet with his match. On the other side, Fame had so spread abroad the worthy act of Orson the savage, upon the Green Knight, that multitudes of people resorted into the Palace, to see and behold him, in so much that the Duke commanded the Gates to be shut against them. Orson perceiving the people so abundantly to approach, and hearing the noise, leapt up into a window, to behold the people, so that they willing to see him, and he desired to see them, at night they all departed to their houses. The people being departed, and supper ended, they passed the rest of the night in merriments, and so to bed. Valentine being brought to his Chamber, went to bed, making signs to Orson to lie down by him; but he not regarding his kindness, laid him down upon the ground according to his wonted use, and so passed away that night. Morning being come, Valentine and Orson went into the Hall, where they found the Lady Fezon accompanied with the other Knights, holding a dispute among themselves who should first fight with the Green Knight. At last stood up a worthy Knight of France (called Gale-ram) and said, Lords, so you be pleased, I am the man intend the first tryal; to this they agreed, and presently armed him. Being armed

armed, he came to the Lady, taking his leave in all joy, and she to requite his kindness, gave him free leave, wishing the Gods to preserve and keep him from all danger, so that he may return as Conqueror: The Knight most humbly thanked her, and so took horse and hasted him toward the Tent of the Green Knight. The Green Knight perceiving from far his approach, set spurs to his horse, and encountered the famous Knight Galeram so fiercely, that he smote him off the horse to the earth. The Green Knight seeing him on the ground, suddenly lighted from his horse, and took off the Helm from his head, Galeram fearing nothing but present death, yielded to the mercy of him, but all in vain, for without pity, he first disposed him of his Arms, and after hanged him on a Tree, as he had done the rest before. Orson perceiving that Galeram was put to death, made signs with his hands that he would fight with him presently, not letting him have any respite: but Valentine answered him again by signs, that he should withhold himself for a while, for he would first gather his own strength on him: Hereupon he presently put himself in arms, and being armed, took his way towards the brautious Lady, to take his leave, as it becomed him: being come before her, she grew wondrous sorrowful, and yet at last she spake unto him on this manner: Alas, fair Knight, what madness is this in you to adventure your life for the love of such an unfortunate Lady as I? well, if thou wilt needs run into danger go on, but I will invoke the Gods to aid and assist thee against thine and mine enemy, and so farewell.

Leaving thus taken of the Lady and the rest of the Knights, Valentine mounted his horse, to take his way toward the Green Knight. As he was ready to put forth, he met with a worthy Knight, who was likewise enamored with the love of the Lady, and thus began to say to him, Sir, have a little patience, I entreat you, and suffer me to go first. Friend (quoth Valentine) I freely grant your desire, go, and return with victory. This Knights name was Tyris, born in Savoy, a man of great birth and living, but riotously had run through his means, leaving himself little, save only his horse and Arms, having thus obtained leave of Valentine, he also took leave of the Ladies there assembled, and so departed.

departed into the Tent of the Green Knight: the Green Knight perceiving Tyris to approach, leapt out of his Pavillion to welcome him: Tyris, seeing him, said, Sir, presently mount thy Horse and defend thy self, for I breath out defiance against thee: the Green Knight hearing him say so, called for his Horse, which presently was brought unto him, and putting his foot into the stirrup, lustily leaped himself in the saddle, and betook him to his Spear and Green Shield, preparing to take their course each at other, but at the first encounter, the Green Knight ran so furiously, that he smote Tyris quite through the body with his Spear, so that he fell down stark dead; which he perceiving put a Cord about his neck, and hanged him up amongst the rest.

Valentine hearing of the death of Tyris, was wonderful so: regretful, yet taking courage he recommended himself to the Gods: having thus done, he put spurs to his Horse and took his way speedily towards the Tent where the Green Knight remained. When the Green Knight espyed him, he was more fearful of him than of all the rest: wherefore he called unto him, saying: Knight give ear to that I now shall say, seek thou yonder Tree, there shall thou find hanging a Green Shield, fetch it thither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir (said Valentine) you have Servants enough of your own, send them, for by me it shall never be fetched. By my Law (quoth the Green Knight) you shall either bring me the Shield, or else know this you shall never conquer me. When Valentine had well considered these words he spake as touching the fetching of the Shield, he valiantly rode towards the Tree, but he lost his labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sore vexed, and returning unto the Green Knight in an angry mood, said thus unto him: Go fetch thy Shield thy self for I cannot have it; wherefore thou art cursed be thou Mithras an thou so stultified it, and an evil end befall thee that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend (quoth the Green Knight) shall I tell thee wherefore I sent thee thither, it was; for that this Shield was given unto me by a Fairy, and therein remaineth such vertue, that no man, be he never so strong, can take it from the place where it is fastned, save only he alone, by whom I shall be overcome, and for the doubt thereof of thee, therefore sent I thee thither: but now my doubt is satisfied,

hed, and therefore I aduise thee to return to the place from whence thou camest, and save thy self, for seeing thee so fair a Knight I am forced to pity thee, and take no pleasure in thy death: from which thou canst not escape, if thou fightest with me. Further, to the end thou shouldest not think I uttered these words to abuse thy patience, know this, that there is none living that can vanquish me, except first, he be the Son of a King, and next, such a one as never sucke the breast of any woman. Now if thou beest such a one, thou mayst overcome me, if not thou dost but shorten thy own days by an untimely death. At these words Valentine took little pleasure, knowing that by this relation he could not be that man; but seeing that he was come to that enterprize, he would not return till he had assayed his strength against him: and therefore with a loud voice he spake thus unto the Green Knight: Valiant and redoubted Knight, I well understand I am not the man by whom you shall be conquered, yet whosoever I am I will not depart hence until I have fought with you. By the Gods (quoth the Green Knight) when thou hast some secret treason to work against me, that thus thou runnest upon thy death wilfully, but ere I part with thee, I shall make thee know the price of this thy rashness, and therewithal leapt upon his horse, bidding one of his Seruants to bring unto him a box of precious balm, the vertue of it was such, that what wound soeuer he receiued, though neuer so mortal, it had power instantly to heal up the breach, as diuers times before he had made tryal of the same.

After he had receiued the Box of Ointment, he suddenly pursues to his horse, and couching his Spear in his rest, both ran their course so furiously that their spears brake in many peices: so bending themselves to the next course, they valiantly drew out their Swords. After that Valentine beheld himself so mightily, that he gaue the Green Knight so fell a stroke, that he cut him through his Armour, insomuch that the blood issued out in great abundance. The Green Knight feeling himself wounded, lift up his arm to seerch a blow, that he struck away a great piece of his thigh, and having thus wounded him, said unto him: You may see I can wield a Sword as well as you, I told you before, that you will fall under my hand, and anon I shall be faine to hang up your dead corps upon a tree, as I have

have done the rest of the Knights as come before you, Pagan (said Valentine) vantage not thy self overmuch, for as yet I am not conquered, therefore defend thy self, and there with he gave the Green Knight such a blow, that he smote away a great quarter of his Shield, and the Green Knight at the same encounter, brake his sword upon the Helm of Valentine, & with the violence of the blow felled him from off his horse: Valentine being always valiant, suddenly recovered him upon his feet. The Pagan seeing him rise up, drew out a sharp pointed knife, and threw it at Valentine, but he seeing it come, started a little aside, so that it missed him. The Green Knight being thus unarmed of his weapons, turned about his horse, thinking to have recovered them again, but Valentine being on the ground & taking fit opportunity, cut off his horse's feet, so that both he and his horse came tumbling to the earth. Being on the earth he suddenly arose again, and then they were both together by strength of arms, holding one another. But to be short, the bickering was so fierce between them, that they were both sore wounded.

The Pagan quickly healed his wounds with the Balm before spoken of. This fight continued so long that the day began to shut in, and both grew extream weary. The Green Knight was so vexed that he could not overcome Valentine, and though he were even spent in weariness, yet he proudly bear it out, saying: Knight give over, for I perceive thy weariness, & the sun declineth, therefore it would be little honour for me to conquer thee. Go return again to Aquitain, and rest there this night; and report, that there never encountered me, so valiant a Knight as thou art.

But meet me to morrow, and before thy coming, take leave of all thy friends, for thou shalt never return. Valentine accepted his kind offer, and was glad thereof, for he was weary and sore wounded; So going to his horse, which was in another field, he returned back again to the City. When Duke Savary and his Lords saw Valentine return, they were joyful, and received him in great honour: among the rest there assembled, was Orson, who ran and caught him in his arms, and kissed him. Being come into the Palace, the Duke demanded what tidings from the Green Knight. Sir (said Valentine) he resteth in his Pavilion.

tion, and I think he is of that puissant strength and courage, that there is not a man living able to vanquish him. *Valentine* (quoth the Duke) you have escaped well, for never did any return as yet, but all have perished under the hands of the Green Knight, wherefore you have proved your self a valiant Knight. Gracious Duke (said *Valentine*) of my conquest over him I can make but small boast: but to morrow there is appointed a new tryal of man-hood, and the victory may light upon whom the Gods please to favour: having thus ended conference with the Duke, *Valentine* was unarmed, and then conducted to the Chamber of the Lady Fezon. The Lady was right joyful to see him return with life from the Combate of the Green Knight. By this time supper drew on, and the Duke taking his place at the Table, caused *Valentine* to be set on his left hand, at the upper end of the board, for the Duke did honour him in the highest degree that might be. Supper being ended, *Valentine* withdrew himself unto his private Chamber, and the Green Knight rested in his Pavillion, where we will leave him, and speak of *Valentine*, who being in his Chamber, made many complaints.



CHAP. XXII

How *Valentine* took good advice, and sent *Orson* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, and how *Orson* overcame him.

Valentine having appointed the morrow to fight with the Green Knight, began to be troubled inordinately as he lay in bed, still bethinking him on what had happened him the day before. At last when he had ruminated all his imaginations, he began to resolve upon this conclusion. I am not, neither can be that Kings Son that should overcome the Green Knight, for I can neither remove the shield he sent me for, neither was I nourished without the breast of Woman. Again, I am very doubtful of the Combate, and therefore stand wavering, whereupon to rely. At last he began thus

thus to think: What if Orson, should be armed in my head, and thereby try the worth of fortunes wrack: why it shall be so. The break of the day appearing, he arose from his weary bed, and coming unto Orson, he told him by signs how that he should put on his Armour, and take his Horse, and make towards the Green Knights Pavillion to fight with him.

Orson understanding by his signs his hearts intent, leaped and danced up and down the Hall joyfully, making signs to Valentine again, that the Pagan Knight should never escape his hands, and denying his Horse and Arms, desired nothing of him, save only a club of wood, such an one as he was accustomed to wield, and shaking his Head, made signs that he would have no other Armour against the Pagan Knight. Valentine seeing him so resolute, gave him to understand by signs, that he must put on the same Armour, and ride upon the same horse that Valentine brought out of France: for that the Knight should know no other, but that it was Valentine that came against him. The Wild-man understanding the liberty intended, agreed unto all that Valentine commanded him. So Orson was Armed with the same Armour and Horse which Valentine had employed the day before. Orson being thus armed (contrary to his accustomed manner) seemed a right personable creature, and made many signs, that he would overcome the Green Knight ere the noon tide of the day, without either mercy or pity, and in these signs he was so earnest, that he caused great laughter, throughout all the assembly then present. Orson thus prepared, he took his leave of Duke Savary, and embraced Valentine, and made him signs to stand in fear of nothing, so: before that he returned, he would bring the Green Knight with him, either alive or dead.

After this manner departed Orson, but before he took his Horse, he had forgot to take his leave of the fair Lady Fezon, so returning back again to the Palace, where the Lady sat accompanied with her train, and espying her, would have run unto her, and kissed her, so: by signs he gave her to understand, that for the love of her he would presently fight with the Pagan Knight. The Lady in a haste, returned back again, in sign that she loved him

receding well, wishing him to bear himself haliantly, and at his return back again, he would grant unto him her love. Thus having taken his leaue of the Lady Fezon, and the rest of the Ladies there assembled, he betook him to his Horse, and being gone from the Dukes Palace, there was nothing so much talked on generally throughout the whole City, but that the Wild-man was gone to Combate with the Green-Knight, whereat was much wonder. It was not long but Orson came unto the Pavilion of the Green knight, and without any words smote the top thereof with his Spear, signifying defiance. The Green Knight taking this Rustick Salutation in great scorn, swore by Mahomet, that he would fetter his Pride ere the Evening Sun took rest, and therewithal mounted on his Steed, and couched his Spear in his rest, and entred the field against Orson.

Orson seeing him in a readyness, seemed to give back, as half afraid, and presently having gathered more courage, they encountered with such force, that both Horse and Man fell unto the earth: Being both down, they lightly recovered their feet, drew forth their Swords, and laid one at the other right fiercely. The Green knight being fired with anger and pride, smote Orson such a great blow that he cut the Circle of Gold upon his Helm, and smote a great piece of his Shield quite off; and wounded Orson so deeply, that with the out-rage of the stroak, his Sword fell out of his hand. Orson seeing the blood run down about him, was far more fierce then before, rolling his eyes, and shaking his head, at last with his Sword he took the Giant such a pat upon his Head, that he entred the flesh and bare a great part thereof afore him, and his Sword sliding off his Head, took him on the arm so powerfully, that the blood followed in great abundance. The Green Knight having his former Balsamum, feared no wounds, which made Orson think it was in vain any longer to use his Sword, such he could heal himself so quickly.

Upon this, Orson threw away all his Armour and weapons, and suddenly ran upon the Green Knight, and caught him fast by the arms so strongly, that he cast him on the ground: Being under him, Orson took off his Helm, and held him so down, that the



Green knight did yield to his mercy. Orson, nothing regarding his subjection, would suddenly have taken away his life, if Valentine had not fallen in presently to his rescue, by riding post to see the end of the Combate. Being come, he made signs to Orson that he should not kill him, which Orson obeyed, but still kept him in subjection. And at last, Valentine began to speak to the Green knight, saying: Proud Knight, you well see that you are in the hands of your enemy; wherefore I think it fit that you suffer present death, for look how you have done to the vanquished knights, by hanging them on yonder Tree, so likewise you your self should be hanged on the highest branch of all, above the rest. Alas (quoth the Green knight) you seem to be a man of pity, furnished with courtesie, therefore my request unto you is, to spare my life. No, (quoth Valentine) that shall I not, except upon condition: first, that you renounce your paganism: and secondly, go with me into France to King Pippin, telling him that by Valentine and Orson

you were overcome in single Combate : to all these conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my oath to perform whatsoever you have already spoken.

Then Valentine made a sign unto Orson that he should rise, which he readily obeyed, but so, that he left him nothing about him to make any further resistance. Being upon his feet, he spake thus unto Valentine : Sir, it was you that combated against me yesterday, therefore you, and none but you, did I expect this day also; but I see I am conquered by another, even the same that in the Dukes Palace threw me upon the ground. True (quoth Valentine) the very same. Why then (quoth the Green Knight) I shall reveal unto thee one secret more, and I beseech thee to grant unto me my request : send this Knight that hath conquered me, to yonder tree, and if he bring away with him the shield there fastned, then am I well assured he is the man should conquer me, otherwise there is no man living can triumph in my conquest. Hereupon Valentine made a sign unto Orson to fetch away that shield, who did as he appointed him, and coming near the tree, he stretched forth his arme to take it down, and suddenly it leaped into his hand, and so he brought it with him to the Green Knight. When he saw Orson have the shield, his heart smote against his sides, and throwing himself at his feet, would have kissed them : but Orson receiuing signs from Valentine to the contrary, would not suffice him, but took him by the arms and lifted him up: Being upon his feet, he spake thus : Alas, I of all others, owe unto you all my service, and all reverence, for now I am assured you are both a hardy and a valiant Knight, and amongst all other I confess that by conquerring me, you have won unto your self everlasting fame.

Moreover, this assure your self, that he that conquers me, can be no less than Son unto a King and Queen, and must be such a one as never sucked the breast of any Woman : and that this shall appear to be the truth, I shall further prove it by my Sister *Clerimond*, for she hath a Head of Brats that telleth her the adventures and fortunes that to her and all her Generation shall befall. Likewise, that this Head shall continue speaking untill such time as the most worthy of the world enter into the Chamber

her where it now standeth, and he being once entred, the said head should lose his vertue, and is the onely man to have my Sister *Clerimond* to Wife, wherefore (fair Knight) these things thus fallen out as you see, I greatly desire you would wed my Sister, as the most hardiest and Renownedst Knight in the World.



CHAP. XXIII.

Orson having conquered the Green Knight, *Valentine* caused him to be Christned, and sending him to King *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight.

The Green knight having made this motion of the Marriage of his Sister, gave unto *Valentine* a Ring of Gold; upon condition that he would carry that Ring unto her: which Ring *Valentine* accepted, and the Green knight yielded himself as a Prisoner, and is now going towards France, to accomplish that Oath that he before had given him. *Valentine* having received this Ring, never rested till he had seen the Lady so commended unto him. After this the Green knight (by consent) was crowned King of the Green Mountain, and there held great state: presently upon this league of friendship concluded; he gave commandment throughout all his Realm, that every man should depart away from the Confiners of Aquitaine, and return into their Countries without doing any further damage unto Duke *Savarics* Countrey. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, *Valentine* and *Orson* took and led him as a Prisoner into the City of *Aquitaine*, whereat was no little joy: and the Duke with all his Lords received him with great Triumph into the City. The Green knight being thus brought as a Prisoner to the Duke, began to say on this manner: My Lords, you owe much honour unto the Knight that hath conquered me: and further, I give you to understand for certain, that he can be no less then Son unto a King: and also that he never sucked woman

mans breast; for if he had, he could not have been my Conquerour; for so it was even said by the Brazen Head that standeth in the Chamber of my Sister *Clerimond*. Quoth the Duke, well may this carry some likelihood of truth, for he hath born himself very valiantly against you : wherefore I think it my part to honour him with my utmost endeavours.

By this time is this worthy train entred the Dukes Pellace, whither the Duke commanded his Daughters presence, and then he said unto her ; Daughter, behold here the Green Knight , that hath for your love made spoil of my Country, and I was no way able to repel him back , but only by this valiant Knight that *Valentine* hath brought along with him, from the Court of King *Papin*, who hath extraordinarily freed us of our fears : wherefore this is my desire , that as he hath conquered yours and mine enemy, so he may also conquer your love , whereunto I right willingly agree that you will have him for your Husband. The Duke having thus said, the Lady answered for her self in this manner : My redoubted Lord and Father , you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no reason why I should resist ; but do submit my self to your dispose ; for if I should do otherwise, it were in me great disobedience. And again, my Lord , you know promise is already past , that whosoever he was that could vanquish the Pagan Knight , should for his labour receive me for his Wife. Now my Lord, the day of deliverance is come, so then (according to your promise) you must give him to me , and I receive him as my lawful Spouse : Otherwise, I shall make void the Edict before gone throughout the world , and you thought false in your promise. Daughter (quoth the Duke) ye have spoken right graciously, and your answer pleaseth me highly , and not onely me , but all that are about us: wherefore it were not amiss to know of the Conqueror Knight whether he will have you. If he agree unto this march , I shall give him in dowry half my Country of *Aquitaine*. Hereupon *Valentine* standing by , demanded of *Orson* by signs, whether he would have the fair Lady *Pezeon* to Wife ? who answered again by signs that he would never have other. Then caused the Duke to be brought before him a Priest, who then consecrated them ; and so their time was passed with many divorces.

These things thus ended, Orson made signs unto the Lady, that he would tiber he with her till he had gotten use of his tongue, and that his Companion Valentine had conquered the Love of the Lady Clerimond. Of all which you shall hear more hereafter.

CHAP. XXIV.

How the same Night that Orson was made sure to the Lady Fezon, an Angel appeared unto Valentine, and of the charge she gave unto him.

The day being past with great Banquettings and Solemnity, wherein Fezon was assured unto Orson, the night approached, and every man betook him to his rest: Amongst the rest, Valentine and Orson were lodged most richly in a goodly chamber, and in the dead time of the night, Valentine had the apparition of an Angel appeared unto him, saying: Valentine (know this) that in the morning thou speedily depart this Land, and take along with thee Orson, by whom the Green Knight hath been vanquished, and without further delay get thee to the Castle of Ferragus, there you shall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou shalt understand of whence thou art descended.

This strange Vision drave Valentine into a thousand fears, and in great melancholly passed he away the night; The day being broken, he caused Orson to arise, and being ready, they both passed them unto the Dukes Palace, where he found his Barons attending on him; and amongst the rest there present, the Green Knight. Not long after entered the Duke, being entred, the Green Knight took an occasion to give him the time of the day, and began to speak unto him on this manner: Most Renowned Duke, I freely confess my self vanquished, and withal renounce all right unto your Daughter, concluding an everlasting peace with you, upon condition that you cause me to be baptized. Knight, said the Duke well have you said, I grant your request. When the Priest was come that should baptize him, Valentine being present began thus



to say : Lords, and the residue here assembled , may it please the
 valiant Duke to grant me one boon, which is this , that the name
 of this Knight may be called Pepin , it is the name of the most
 mighty King of France, even he that nourished and fostered me
 even from my Cradle. The Duke consented unto Valentines
 demands, so he was called Pepin; after the baptisim, the Duke made
 a motion to Valentine and Orson for to wed his Daughter the
 beauctious Lady Fezon: but Valentine not allowing thereof, made
 this excuse, that both he and Orson had vowed to go to Jerusalem
 ere they did accept any other action; after the conquest of the
 Green Knight.

The Duke hearing this excuse, gave them leave, upon this con-
 dition, that Orson should take an Oath to return again into A-
 quitain, at his coming back from thence: to this they both agreed.
 The same year also the Green Knight took leave of the Duke of
 Aquitain , and toke his way into France, to keep his promised
 faith, to King Pepin. Before his departure, Valentine asked him

the King that he had promised, who gave it unto him, saying: Whatsoever he be that beareth this about him, shall never stand in fear of drowning, nor be afraid of false accusation. Then Valentine took the Ring and put it on his finger: so Orson and he took leave, and departed the way toward the Lady Clerimond, to find out the Castle of Ferragus: and the Green Knight likewise took his leave for France, to yield himself to King Pepin. Much about this time Blandiman, Squire to the distressed Lady Bellyfant, was arrived at King Pepin's Court, clad in the habit of a Pilgrim, and having saluted the King, he wondered at this his unlookt for shape, and at last asked him from what Sepulchre he was come. Worthy King (said Blandiman) I am no Pilgrim, although I have taken that shape upon me, but only to come more safely unto you, have I betaken me to this habit: wherefore know, that I am a Messenger sent from the High and Mighty Lady your Sister, that by treason and false accusations hath been banished her Country by the Emperor *Alexander*, and at this time liveth in great sorrow of heart, only for that you have unjustly bent your heart against her, and sought no way to relieve her misery.



CHAP. XXV.

How King Pepin came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*: and how the Green Knight submitted himself, according to his promise made unto *Valentine*.

Blandiman having delivered his Message, the King began to demand of him where his Sister was: Blandiman replied, I know right well where she is; but I have given her my word never to discover to any: But worthy King, if you make doubt of her loyalty, I shall bring you a man that will fight in her quarrel to prove her honest: Nay (quoth the King) I have seen trial enough thereof already by the downfall of the Arch-Priest. Also I have made much means to hear of her, but cannot hear any

tydings of her: and indeed that which most grieveth me, is, that she was great with child when she was repulsd the Kingdom; Neither am I assured, whether ever she was delivered of that burthen. My Lord (quoth Blandiman) know this for a truth, that my Lady laid her great belly in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and whilst she dispatched me to get her the help of a woman, or ever I could return, she was delivered of two fair Sons; the one of which was carried violently from her by a Bear into the Wood, she never wist whither, but she followed the Bear so long till at last I found her in a dangerous sound upon the ground. I coming to her, took her up in my arms, and comforted her so well as I could, till being somewhat recovered, in woful sighs she unfolded unto me the whole manner of the loss of her Child by the Bear: and for the other she had left it under the tree: I hearing her say so, hasted towards that tree whereas I left her, but being come thither, I could not find the other Child neither. And thus (worthy King) have I related unto you the whole story of your Sister, and her two Infants in the Forrest, and other tydings have I none but this, that I am that *Blandiman* that you gave unto your Sister to attend her, when she married the Emperor *Alexander*. The King giving ear unto this tale, at last said, Alas *Blandiman*, thy words strikes me into a thousand fears what should become of my Sister, but yet seeing thou canst tell no more, tell me yet how long ago this is that thou hast told me. My Lord (quoth he) it was even that day you met me in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and I related unto you the piteous tydings of your Sisters banishment. This struck the King into such admiration, that he began to recollect his wits, and then presently came into his mind the finding of Valentine in the Forrest, and how by the same Valentine, Orson was conquered in the same Wood. Then he began again to think on the story that Blandiman had told him, and thereby knew that these were the two babes brought forth by his Sister: wherefore he sent for his Queen, and other Ladies, to let them understand what Blandiman had declared, saying, My Lords, I have long time nourished and brought up in my Court two poor Children, and now it plainly doth appear they are Sons to an Emperor, and my near Kinsmen, Valentine the one who was found in the Forrest of *Orleance*, brought forth there by my Sister *Bellyon*,

in the time of her exile: and *Orson* who was likewise vanquished by *Valentine*, to be his natural Brother, and both Sons to the Emperor of *Greece*. At these tydings all the Court was wondrous joyful, save onely *Haufray* and *Henry*, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their hearts very sorrowful, for above all other they desired the death of *Valentine*, that next him they might work their wills of their youngest brother *Charlemain*, against whom they chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will more plainly appear.

But to return back again to *Blandiman*, who hearing the King speak so much of the two Children, demanded of the King if he knew in what Country they were: Why (said the King) one of these I have brought up in my Court a long time, in such fashion, that he is become a right valiant Knight, and by his valor hath conquered his Brother, being a Wild-man living in the Wood at *Orleanse* like a Beast, and one that did much damage to all the Country thereabout. Having conquered him, he brought him to my Court, where having lived some small time, they both departed and took their way towards *Aquitain*, to fight with a right worthy Champion called the Green Knight, and since their departure I never heard what became of them. Sir (said *Blandiman*) according to the tale you have told, I remember well that near *Aquitain* I met two such, but I am much troubled that I knew them not. So the King musing at these accidents, caused *Blandiman* to be highly feasted, and held as a Companion amongst his other Lords: Now it happened, that on the same day the Green Knight (of whom we have before made mention) arrived at Paris at the Kings Court: as soon as he came into the presence of the King, he saluted him with great reverence. The King seeing him all in Armour, marvelled much thereat, and at last demanded the cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came: The Green Knight replying again on this manner. Honourable King, know that I am descended from the *Sarazens*, both by Father and Mother: and true it is that I am that Knight that for the love of the Lady *Fezon*, Daughter to the Duke of *Aquitain*, have for one whole year holden the Duke as my Vassal, and in my subjection, and having him thus under me, I took a Truce with him for six months, upon these conditions, that if within that time he

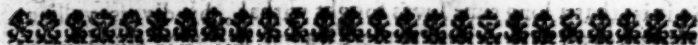
found

found not forth a Knight that by force of Arms should conquer me, I was to have his fair Daughter *Fezon* to Wife: On the other side, if I were conquered, I should remove away my siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing him any further damage. So it is, that a long time I was fought withal, by divers valliant Knights of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endured death, and were still hanged upon a tree; at last it so fell out, that there assailed me two worthy Knights, the one named *Valentine* and the other *Orson*. *Valentine* fought with me one whole day, wherein he bore himself so bravely, that night coming on, we were forced to give over, all wounded, tired, and weary. The next morning when the Battel should be again renewed, his fellow *Orson* armed himself in *Valentines* Armor, entred the field in most fierce and disdainful manner, offering me defiance: I scorning any Competitor, addrest out my self against him, but little availed my strength, for in the end he overcame me, and would have taken away my life, had not *Valentine* come in upon us, and rescued me, upon condition, First, that I should forsake *Mahomet*: Secondly, that I should come unto you, and yield my self at your command, and to stand to your censure either in life or death. Again, when I received Baptisme, he caused me to be called *Pepin*, and so is my name.

The King having heard all this long story from the *Green Kt.* made this answer in the presence of all his Barons: Welcome to us, and of your company we are right glad, live with us in our Court and be joind, for I freely grant you your life, and promise you further, that if you will tarry with us in this Country, I will indow you with many fair Lands and Possessions. The King shewing himself thus gracious, demanded of him where these Knights were that had conquered him: Marry (qd. the *Green Kt.*) I left them both at *Aquitain*, with the valliant Duke *Savary*, who holdeth them in as great respect as any that are remaining in his Court.

Thus you may now perceive, that by the words of *Bladiman*, and the *Green Knight*, King *Pepin* had perfect intelligence of his beauctious sister, and his two valliant Pephews. After all these tydings happened, King *Pepin* made a solemn vow, that he would go himself in person into Greece to see the Emperor.

of these glawson tydings, and to take order to send abroad into all
Lands to find her out.



CHAP. XXVI.

How King Pepin departed from France towards Greece, to bear
these tydings: and how before his return, he warred upon
the mighty Souldan, who had beleagured Constantinople.

King Pepin having put himself in a readyness to depart into
Greece, went forth, and before much time was spent, he ar-
rived at Rome. The Pope hearing of his approach, received him
with great honor, and much feasting. Upon a day, as he sat at
dinner with the Pope in his Palace pontifical, there came ty-
dings unto him that the great Souldan of Egypt had besieged
Constantinople. The Knight that brought this message, after
his salutations ended, began thus to proceed: Holy Father,
the Sarazens with much power hath besieged, and wrongfully
over-run Constantinople, and he gave me charge to crave your
aid against these enemies of Christendome. When the Pope
understood these ill-welcome tydings, he was driven into a
furious dump, not knowing any present way to send them
relief: but King Pepin being in presence, comforted him great-
ly, and said: Holy Father, take no care for this business, for
I request but a competent summe of money and men, and I shall
lead them to Constantinople with such a couragious heart, that
I shall put the Souldan and all his Forces to the worst, such an
inveterate hatred bear I against these Pagan Devils. The Pope
hearing him so resolute, thanked him for his couragious heart,
and said unto him, Right Christian King, seeing thou dost proffer
thy self in person to undertake this service, I shall with all con-
venient speed provide for a business of such import. Instantly
thereupon by a day all things were prepared, and with an Army of
thirty thousand Romans King Pepin departed, and as soon as pos-
sible

able he could, he arriv'd at Constantinople. Being thither come, he found the City round besieg'd, and the Citizens in great fear of the Soldans Army, betaking themselves into the City, harping the same against all the forces of the Pagans.

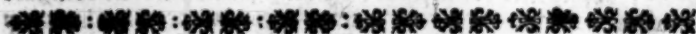
The Emperour himself was forc'd to retire into the City, and being cover'd up in so small a room, his troubled thoughts evermore ran upon the Lady Belysant, whom he had cruelly banish'd; always fearful that she was dead, for it was now full twenty winters past since the time of her exile. By this time it being Pepin come within two miles of Constantinople, and there landed his men, raising Pavillions, pitching of Tents, and ranging his forces into Battel array. The Soldan having knowledge of his arrivall, as also of his provision, was much abashed thereat, and with all diligence returned to his strong Pavillion: and being set down in his magnificence, there came unto him certain of his army fearfully and doubtfully saying thus unto him: Great and mighty Souldan, we come to give you true intelligence, that there is lately arriv'd, to the number of two hundred thousand *Romans* to bid us present battel, under the conduct of *Pepin King of France*. Wherefore it only resteth now, that you take sudden advice how to prevent and resist these forces. Peace Screech owls (quoth the Soldan) be not a afraid, for you are deluded by some false report, the whole Roman Nation is not able to furnish forth such an Army: Go on I say courageously, for I swear by *Mahomet*, ere long I shall bring under my subjection, both the Kingdom of *Rome* and *France* also. Wherefore call up your Troops, plant them, and put our Squadron in readinesse for to receive them.

The morning following King Pepin set his Army in order of battel secretly to assault the Pagan host, and secretly sent a Letter to the Emperour, being in the City, whereby he requested the Emperour, that they within the City should put themselves in readinesse, and so issue out upon the Pagans on that side: for King Pepin and his army now would receive them on the other side, then being all encompass'd about, there was hope to get the day of the Sarazens.

The Emperour receiv'd these Letters joyfully, and did as King Pepin commanded them, and issued forth of the City, bidding battel to the Sarazens. They have no sooner enter'd the field, but they perceiv'd

perceived the Army of King Pepin, marching on with banners displayed, and noise of trumpets sounding in most outrageous manner. This made the Pagans to look about, and the Soldan calling to him two of his hardiest men of War, commanded them secretly to go through the Host of the Christians, and if it were possible, to number them. These two did as the Soldan commanded, but being come near the Host of King Pepin, the Green Knight espied them coming down a little Hill, drawing somewhat nearer, he discerned they were Sarazens, and presently put spurs to his horse, he ran against them with such fury, that his Spear brake upon his own thigh: The Sarazens seeing him run so fiercely, did not flye, but received him valiantly, as hereafter followeth in the next Chapter.

THE END OF THE



CHAP. XXVII.

How the Green Knight Justed against the two Sarazens, and having slain the one, the other fled: and how King Pepin and his Host was lodged within *Constantinople*.

The Green Knight having recovered a new Spear, he ran fiercely against both the Sarazens, and hitting one of them in a very dangerous place, smote him to the earth, so that he never rose, then making against the other, he gave him such a wound that suddenly he fled away; King Pepin seeing this accident, presently assailed the Soldans Host, and Myllon Daugler slew the King of Aquile, and three other ere he gave over the field, with many and divers other worthy deeds of Chivalry; The Soldan seeing him so play the Devil in his Host, cryed out to follow Daugler that had made such havoc: So they did as he commanded, pursuing him so close on both sides, that at length they cut off one of his Horses thighs, forcing him to fall upon the earth, and had there perished; had not the Green Knight (mauger all the Sarazens) thrust himself into the presse, slaying and beating down as many as made any resistance, and in the end so relieved Daugler, that he freshly horsed him, and brought him clean out of danger.

ger. After this they both joynd together in such furious out-rage, that they spared none that came in their way. Fierce was this battel, and endured long, but King Pepin and his men made great slaughter among the Pagans: but notwithstanding all this their valor, they had lost the day, had it not been for the Emperoz, that with his host valiantly assailed the Pagans on the other side, and made amongst them a very bloody slaughter. The King seeing the courage of the Emperoz so mighty, gathered together again his scattered Troops, and entred into the battel with great fury, and now were the Pagans begirt round about. As soon as the King came unto the sight of the Emperoz, he said unto him: Great Prince, shew thy self right valiant, and this day e're night, I shall tell thee rydings of thy fair Lady *Belysant*.

These words added fresh courage unto the Emperoz, who cryed out to his men; Courage for *Constantinople*: and he that wins honor shall be richly rewarded. And with these words entred again into the thickest of the battel, where he, King Pepin and the Green Knight so valiantly behaved themselves, that which way soever they turned, they mane way befoze them.

Now began the Sarazens to doubt whether they should escape away alive, and therefore fearing the worst, betook themselves to flight: But their flight being espyed by the King of *Sclavonia*, who led the rear-ward for the Souldan, presently rushed in with their Troops consisting of fifty thousand fighting men, making withal so great a shout, that it seemed by the sound thereof, their part got the better. The Emperoz and the King perceiving their coming, wisely considered that their men were tyred and out-woyn, and the enemy fresh and lusty, sounded a retreat, and retired themselves and all their Souldiers into the City. The Souldan seeing this, followed upon them, and strongly besieged the City round about, so that neither the Emperoz nor the King could issue out thereof. Thus they abode, till they were well nigh famished, thinking thereby utterly to overthrow the Christians. So leave we them, and return to Valentine and Orson, who for the love of *Cleimond* have adventured, as you have already heard.

C H A P. XXVIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle wherein fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen-head, they had knowledge of their Parents.

A fter many days travel, at last *Valentine* and *Orson* lighted upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle strong and impregnable, the covering whereof was of shining mettall, glittering so in the Sun, that it drave *Valentine* in suspection, that it was it wherunto the *Green Knight* had directed him to have a sight of the fair Lady *Clerimond*. At all adventures he maketh way towards this Castle, and at last entred into this Island by one of the Ports thereof. Being entred, he demanded who was owner of that Castle which appeared so sumptuous to the eye? Answer was returned, that the Castle was in the keeping of the fair *Clerimond*, Sister unto the *Spant Ferragus*, and builded by a mighty man in substance, a Sarazen: the which Sarazen, amongst all other his excellent works done in that Castle, he caused one chamber to be richly adorned: of the which chamber more shall be spoken of in that place.

Moreover, it was told unto *Valentine* amongst other things, that in the chamber stood an excellent Pillar made by Art, upon the which Pillar stood a Head of a Beast, composed a long time before by the Magromancy of a Fairy, the which Head was of such an excellent composition, that it gave answer to any thing that was demanded. *Valentine* hearing this strange relation of the Castle, was right glad; for now he was verily perswaded that this must needs be the very Castle he had so long time sought, & where, in the *Green Knight* told him he should find his Sister, so highly praised of all *Peoples* for her excellent beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he left questioning any further, and went on his way accompanied with *Orson*, to see if he could get entred into this Castle. By this time they were come to the gates thereof where

where thinking to enter, they were resisted by ten sturdy knights,
that kept the gate night and day.



When they saw Valentine and Orson make proffer to enter,
they said unto them: Lords, or what ever you be, with-draw your
selves back, for into this Castle entrech none of what birth soever,
without the leave and liscence of a Maiden, to whom we (as Guard)
do appertain. Why (quoth Valentine) go tell her, and ask whether
it be her pleasure we enter, or not? Yet upon one of them entrech
into the Chamber where fair Clerimond was, and kneeling unto
her, said: Lady, before your Gate standeth two Gallants, that
would enter your Castle, they seem fierce and couragious, full of
high spirit, and men far disagreeing from the Laws and Religion
of our Countrey: Now fair Lady say, shall they have entrance? de-
scend (quoth the Lady) while I go forth into a window to take a
view of them, and let the gates be surely kept, for I mean to que-
stion with them my self. The Porter did as she commanded, then
Clerimond that was well tongued, leaned out of a window, and

in a tower covered with Gold, and said unto Valentine, What are you, that dare offer to enter my Castle without leave? Lady (quoth Valentine, with an undaunted courage) I am a Knight that travelleth this way, and would gladly speak with that head of Brass that remaineth within this Castle, if it be your pleasure, because (as I do understand) it resolveth doubts. Knight (quoth the Lady) upon these terms you may not enter: but if you can bring me any certain sign from one of my Brethren, either from King *Ferragus*, or the Green Knight, Lord of *Tartary*, then you may freely enter this Castle: Or by one other means yet may you enter, that is, by the Seneschal of this place, with whom you may run six courses with your Spear to try your valor, wherefore now be advised, either fetch me some certain tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your fortune in single Combate as I have told you. Lady (quoth Valentine) against your Seneschal I dare adventure, for I had rather win my entrance by ponderous blows, then by entreats and fawning speeches. This choice chose Valentine, rather then to bewray the ring which he had brought along with him, given him by the Green Knight, to present to his Sister *Clerimond*. The Lady seeing his resolute hardnes, suddenly fell in love with him, and presently went into the Chamber where the head of Brass lay, and said unto it: What is that Knight of courage that would so gladly enter this Castle? Lady (quoth the head) of that Knight shall you know nothing, untill such time as you have brought him before me. *Clerimond* at this answer seemed very sorrowful, for he was greatly in love with Valentine.



CHAP. XXIX.

How (when as *Valentine* was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*. And how he juffed for the entrance, and overcame the Seneschal.

Clerimond pondering in her mind the words of *Valentine*, being overcome with affection, said on this manner: Ah *Valentine* is valorous, and beautiful, and if I have power over the head of Brass,

Brass, I shall never take other Husband then this Knight. Whereupon he sent for the Seneschal, and told him, that this Knight would enter the Castle. The Seneschal hereat enraged, began thus: Lady, if he be so hardy to attempt it, I shall quickly make him know that he cometh too late to gain your love!

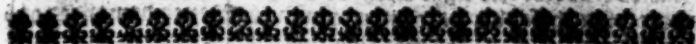


Seneschal (said the Lady) since it must be so, go arm you presently, and so he departed to put himself in arms. Being armed, he mounted his horse, couched his spear in his rest, and withal issued out of the gate in readines. The Lady also got into a window to behold the Combate. When Valentine saw the Seneschal to come towards him, he couched his spear, and putting spurs to his horse, they met so fiercely, that their spears brake in peeces; presently having a new supply, suddenly they met so fiercely, that they fell to the ground horse & man: but Valentines horse got up with his master. Valentine being thus saved by his horse, said unto the Seneschal, Rise up, and newly mount your self, for there is no honor in

222

conquering an enemy at advantage. All hereupon the Seneschal
 was freshly mounted, and new spears given them again: then took
 they a fresh carrier, and here withal Valentine so encountered him
 about the head, that he bore away his helm, and they both horse
 and man down upon the earth. The Seneschal seeing himself in
 danger, said thus unto Valentine, Knight, I know not from whence
 you are, nor of what parentage, but never in my life found I a man
 of thy valor: wherefore I yield, and withal give thee leave to enter
 this Castle at thy pleasure (onely upon this condition, that you
 speak not unto the Lady *Clarimond* without my leave.) Quoth
 Valentine, thou hast requested that which I will not grant, for
 know, it was for her love that I came hither, and though I never
 yet saw her, yet are my thoughts on fire. Therefore from hence I
 will never part till I have both spoken with her, and also with the
 brazen Head. The Lady all this while standing at the window,
 wondered what conference passed between these two Champions,
 and at last thus said unto one of her Maidens: See how indiscreet
 this Seneschal is, to fight with such a valiant Knight, who long
 since might have taken away his life. When Valentine saw the
 great pride of the Seneschal, and that he stood out with him, be-
 ing his Prisoner, he suddenly ran against him another course,
 and there withal gave him so deadly a stroke, that he ran him clean
 through the body, so that he fell off his Horse stark dead; at the
 which the Lady *Clarimond* was exceeding joyful, commanding
 them to let open the Gates, and that Valentine should be brought
 in unto her in the great Hall. When that the Lady had beheld
 Valentine well, she came towards him, and said unto him
 in this manner; Knight, you are most welcome, for I never
 saw a more valiant and courageous man all the days of my life:
 Enter my Castle, for it appeareth by your valour & chivalry, that
 you are descended from the loyns of some Royal Stock. Lady, know
 this for a certainty, my name is called *Valentine*, a poor adven-
 turer, for neither my self nor this my Companion, never knew from
 what Stock we were descended. He was nourished by a beast in the
 Forrest, and lived there like a Wild-man, till when as I con-
 quered him by my sword. Besides, he never spake in his life more
 then you see at this instant. Wherefore, Lady, thus far have I
 travel.

travelled to the knowledge of my Parents, but chiefly to gain the love of you, being so fair a Lady.



CAAP. XXX.

How Valentine shewed Clerimond her brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Brazen Head, which told him from whence he was descended.

Valentine having purchased free entrance by overcoming the Senechal, at last he shewed the King that the Green Knight had given him, and smiling delivered it to the Lady, who gladly received the token, saying: Fair Knight, had you showed this Ring when you first craved access into this Castle, you had never endured the danger that you have now escaped: but sith it hath pleased you to try your valor, I cannot better commend you, then to admire your brave courageous heart. Whilst Valentine & the Lady were thus talking together, the tables were spread, the Lady sat down, & Valentine was also placed just against her, in whom she took her greatest felicity, as he in her: dinner being ended, Clerimond arose from the table, & taking Valentine by the hand, said thus unto him: Sir, well have you purchased your welcome, deserving to enter into my priviest chamber, & so you shall, even that chamber, wherein the brazen Head standeth, the which Head shall declare all that you can desire: and make no doubt but it will tell you most joyful tydings: wherefore both you & your Companions come along with me, for I as gladly long to hear as you desire to be heard. Hereat Valentine grew exceeding joyful, & so, for that he should now understand that which he long desired to know: secondly, that the Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their way out of the Hall, he brought them into that chamber: being come unto the door thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the chamber door guarded in this manner: On the one side a grim, fearful, and ugly hapen Chikim, strong, and crooked, armed with a Club & Iron upon his neck, which offered to make resistance: On the

other side of the chamber door stood a most fierce Lyon, these two continually kept the door, that none could enter in without the Ladies leave, or else fight with the Villain and Lyon. Valentine perceiving these rich Watchmen to make resistance, demanded of the fair Lady Clerimond the meaning thereof, who answered: These two you see here are to keep this door, that none may enter without fighting with them, and that divers have perished in their presumption; and again the Lyon is of such fierceness, that he will suffer none to pass, except the Son of a King, and to such she shewes her self very loving.

Lady (quoth Valentine) happen what will, yet I mean to try my fortune with the Lyon, and by main strength caught him about the body, whereat the Lyon forsook him, and let him pass. Orson likewise assailed the Villain, and ere he could be ready to lift up his club of iron, he took him by the middle so strongly, & he threw him against the wall, he took away his club, and gave him such a blow, that he tumbled him on the ground, and had it not been for the Lady Clerimond, he had slain him in that place. Being both thus banquished, the gate was opened, and they entered the chamber, where in them might see all the world could afford, as Gold, Silver, Rubies, Diamonds, such great multitude of precious stones, within this Chamber was four Pillars of Jasper, marvellous rich of which, two of them were yellow as most fine gold, a third green more green then grass, a fourth more red then a flame of fire between these pillars was a precious stone called an Amery, more rich then the heart of man can devise: in midst of which stood a Head of Beasts set upon a rich Pillar. Valentine wondering at the riches of these objects, fixed his eyes only upon the Head, longing to hear what it should publickly open concerning his birth. At length, when every voice was silent, the Head began to speak after this manner. Thou famous Knight, of Royal Parentage, thou art called *Valentine*, the valiant, of whom it may justly be said, there was never the like appeared before me. Thou art the man, who of right ought to marry with the Lady *Clerimond*, thou art Son to the Emperor of Greece, and thy Mothers Name is *Belysant*, Sister to King *Pepin* King of France, who by wrong suggestions hath been banished her Country, and Husband bed: know this, thy Mother

ther is in *Portugal*, in the Castle of *Ferragus*, who hath had the keeping of her these twenty years. *Pepin* is thy Uncle, and the wild-man who hath ever accompanied thee, is thy natural Brother, you two were delivered by the Empress *Belysant*, in the Forrest of *Orleance*, and being brought forth, thy companion was taken away by a ravenous Bear, and by her he was nourished in that wood amongst the rest of her whelps, and never sucked he any other: for thy part *Valentine*, thou wast found the very same day in that Forrest by King *Pepin*, who hath nourished thee tenderly, and brought thee up to mans estate: Further, thus much I shall also tell thee, that this thy brother here present, shall never have use of his tongue, till a thread be cut under the same, and then thou shalt hear him speak plainly. Therefore proceed as thou hast begun and thou shalt prosper: for my time is at a period, sith thou art come to enter into this chamber, and so bending it self towards him in token of reverence, it never spake more.

Valentine marking well all that the head had uttered, fell upon the bosome of his brother *Orson*, and *Orson* on his, and with kind embraces they counter-changed each other. The Lady seeing all this, began thus to break out into speeches, Alas, courteous Knight, I of all other ought most to joy at this your happy arrival, for by you am I freed of a ten years hearts grief, which I have hardly undergone heretofore. Again, by this Brazen Head I understand that you have ever been the Man on whom my affections should rest, and whereunto I gently agree (if you please) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady (quoth *Valentine*) I accept you as my wife, who was given to me by your brother the Green Knight, that was vanquished by my Brother *Orson*, before the City of *Aquilon*, onely this I shall request, that as your Brother the Green Knight hath done for *Mahomet*, so you would do the like. Sir (quoth she) I shall gladly please you in any thing you shall command me, and be obedient to your will in every point, whilst you and I shall live. And so great joy betwixt all the Inhabitants of this Castle, to see the right glasse of the sayings, that the brazen head had uttered unto them. After this, the reputation of *Valentine* increased more and more, but all their former joy and glorie was soon after eclipsed.

by the treachery of her Brother Ferragus, as hereafter shall be more fully declared.



CHAP. XXXI.

Now the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*, by the means of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter.

NOW shall you understand, that within this Castle where *Clerimond* was, dwelt a Dwarf (named *Pacolet*) which the Lady had nourished and brought up of a child, bestowing much cost to have him taught in Schools; This *Pacolet*, being of more age then stature, grew exceeding witty, and at last he studied the black-art, & therein grew so famous in *Pyromancy*, that by enchantment he had composed a little Horse made of wood, in the head of which Horse, he had so artificially conveyed a pin of wood, that every time he mounted on his back to ride abroad, he would turn the pin toward the place he would go unto, and suddenly he would be in the same place without danger, for the Horse could run as fast as the Air more swift then any bird. This *Pacolet* being in the Castle, observed the behaviour of *Valentine*, and when he had at time, he addressed himself for *Portugal*, to bear news to *Ferragus*, how all matters had passed at the Castle. So he betook himself to his wooden horse, and in a moment of time (setting the pin for that part) he arrived there according to his desired wish, and related the story unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* heard this tale, he grew exceeding angry against *Valentine*, for he would have his Sister in marriage; also he grew enraged at her, that she would grant her love unto him (being a Christian Knight) swearing by his Word, to take revenge upon them both: but all this while he communicated unto *Pacolet*, bidding him return and bear this message to *Clerimond*, that the Knight *Valentine*, who had done her so much wrong, is right welcome, & he & long I will come in person to visit them, accompanied with a gallant troop of Nobles, and then shall they

their nuptial be royally solemnized; so Pacolet took leave and got him on his horse, and was in an instant come home again. Being come, he presently went into the presence of the Lady Clerimond, and said unto her; Madam, I have been in *Portugal*, with your Brother *Ferragus*, who is glad of your choice with *Valentine*, and promiseth ere long to be here in person, and to make a Royal Marriage. At this tale the Lady stood amazed, and at last began to answer him thus: Ah *Pacolet*, is this true that thou hast told? Ay me, the Gods defend my Brother from plotting any Treason against me, for I am well assured he could never abide a Knight of *France*, nor any other that is a Christian; I am right angry that thou didst not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had serious business for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a woman-Christian, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my Brother *Ferragus*, in the Castle that he now holdeth.



CHAP. XXXII.

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugal* to see the Lady *Belysant*, *Valentine's* Mother, and his returning back, and the news that he brought.

The Lady having ended her tale, *Pacolet* made her this answer, Lady, seeing you are so earnest, I shall for your sake make another journey into *Portugal*, and before to-morrow mid-day I shall bring you tidings whether she be there or no. *Valentine* hearing him say so, replied; That canst thou not do, except the devil be in thee, the Lady *Clerimond*, said unto *Valentine*, let him alone, for by art he hath so provided, that he will ride more then a thousand miles a day. Hereat *Valentine* marvelled much, and calling *Orson* unto him, he cut the thread from under his tongue, that hindered his speech; which being done he spake presently, where he related the story of his life led in the Forest, which held them the most part of that evening. On the morrow, according as *Pacolet* had promised, he was found in the Hall before *Valentine*, saying



unto him on this manner: Sir, I am returned from *Portugal*, & have
 seen your Mother in good health: Friend (quoth *Valentine*) thou
 art welcome, for it is she I only desire to hear of. Love (qd. *Cleri-*
mond) be not too hasty, for if my Brother come not hither, we will
 go into *Portugal* to him, and then we shall have both our hearts de-
 sired. Nay surely (quoth *Pascole*) your Brother will come hither:
 I (quoth the Lady) but I stand in fear of him, lest that he work some
 treason against us. For this last night I dreamed a fearful dream,
 at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: I dreamed I
 was in a great water, in the which I should have perished, had it
 not been for a great face that drew me out thereof. Being out,
 me thought I saw a Griffon issue out of a cloud, who with his ta-
 lons took me up; and carried me I know not whither. Love (qd.
Valentine) give no respect at all to dreams, for they be but de-
 lusions of a melancholly mind. 'Tis true (quoth she) but they trou-
 ble me every night. And this was the dream, they entered into

a fair Arboz, garnished with great variety of flowers, reposing themselves some few hours in long ballance, where we'll leave them, and you shall hear that the same day arrived Ferragus the Traitor, at the Castle of Clerimond.

The Lady hearing of his coming, presently went to welcome him, and he as kindly embraced her, and said unto her: Sister, above all creatures living I have most desired to see you; tell me I pray you, which is the Knight you mean to make your Husband? This fair Brother, is the man. Whereupon Valentine saluted him in great reverence. Ferragus said unto him: Fair Knight, ye be welcome into these quarters, for the love of my Sister *Clerimund*. For seeing it is so fallen out, that you have conquered my Brother the Green Knight, and sent him into *France*, causing him to be Christianized, even so have I a great desire to be baptized, to become a Christian, and follow your Religion.

Valentine bearded all these words which he had spoken; but under these fair promises he smothered reason, yet at last, Valentine began thus to say unto him: Sir, it is reported to me, that within your Castle, for the space of these twenty years, you have maintained a Christian woman; who is Mother unto me; whom I would gladly see; her name is *Bolysian*, sister to *Popin King of France*, and Wife unto the *Emperor of Greece*. By *Mahomet*, this *Forragus*: you said truth; and to the end your eyes may behold her, you shall go along with me into *Paradyse*; if so shall you gently be informed whether she be the Lady you seek for, or not. *Gramercy* (quoth Valentine) unto *Forragus* for this, and said unto the *Chief Clerimond* after this manner: Since, my Lords, I desire your advancement more than anything on earth, and am glad you have found out so worthy and valiant a Knight for your *Esposal*; wherefore to knit up all at once my desires, what you would go with him into *Paradyse*, I and the rest with the consent and applause of all my Nobles, we are ready to follow you your *Nuptial Day*, as any Christian might call for, and so forth. And thus he said, and they all went down down, and arrived at the place whither they were bound to go, and found the Lady *Bolysian* as she was told of, and so forth.

C H A P. XXXIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how he committed them to Prison, with their woful lamentations.

Ferragus having thus gotten their good wills to depart for Portugal, put all his ships in a readiness, and packing up all their provision, they put forth to Sea. Being now at Sea, Ferragus fell from all his former words of comfort, and began to plot the death of *Valentine* and *Orson*. In the dead time of the night, when the two Brethren were at rest in their Cabins, he caused them secretly to be taken forth of their beds, and committed them to bands, muzzling their eyes also that they could not see: Now, when *Clerimond* saw what was done unto her love, she fell into an extream agony, and with watery eyes began thus to vent her lamentations. Alas dear *Valentine*, our joys are suddenly turned unto sorrow: thou hast bought my love at too dear a rate, when thou art not onely thus misused, but even in danger of thy life: Cursed be the day of my birth, for with much danger hast thou purchased my love. Alas, alas, what shall I do? Rent heart, weep forth my eyes, when such a valiant, hardy, and most magnanimous Knight must thus be tortured for my sake? Thou hast deceived the trust I put in thee, by working so foul an act against my love: Thou hast robbed me of all joy, and brought upon me an untimely death. Further know this, that if you put to death these two Knights, you carry to your grave the name of a villain. Let them alone, their death will work you small content: or if there be no remedy, spare them, and seize first upon me, and cast me into the Sea, for I would not live to see such two innocents falsely put to death without desert: Yea, even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with very hearts sorrow she would have slain her self, or else violently have leaped over-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceivibg her in this desperate fit, gave strict com-
mand

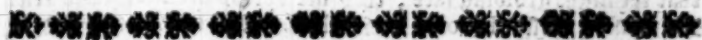
mand that she should be well attended by some of his Barons, and especially that she should not so much as speak a word with either of the Prisoners; and leaving her to her laments, the Christians both Valentine and Orson fast bound in bands. Valentine perceiving himself thus betrayed, began thus to bemoan his hard hap: Alas, quoth he, how contrarily hath fortune dealt with me? I have spent all my youth in travel and danger, onely to find out the Parents that begot me? And see now when hope had well nigh set an end to all my sorrows, I am unhappily fallen into the hands of mine enemies, that only seek my death. Alas Brother Orson, how suddenly are all our joys blasted, & our mirth turned into mourning? On this wise complained Valentine and Orson, but all this while are they on their way towards Portugal, and shortly after arrived at the Castle of Ferragus. Being there arrived, tydings was brought to the Lady Belysant, that two Christian Knights were come along with them as Prisoners: at which news she quickly left her Chamber, & came to have a sight of them. When she was come near unto them, and had well reviewed them, at last she said thus unto them. Children (quoth she) of what Country be you, and where were you born? Lady (quoth Valentine) we be of France, and born not far from Paris; Ferragus perceiving the Lady to speak unto them, sharply rebuked her, saying: Lady, leave your questioning, for except they renounce their faith, they shall miserably end their days in Prison: And herewithal called unto him a Jaylor, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept only with bread and water. This misery was not sufficient, but more then that, certain churlish Sarazans standing by, smote these two Children with their fists and staves.

After Ferragus had committed them, he got him up into his Palace, and called forth his Sister Clerimond unto him; when she came before him, she could not forbear tears, which made him thus to say unto her: Sister, leave weeping, for I swear by Mahomet, you have too long doted upon the Brazen head, as well appeareth in that you make your choice with one of a contrary religion: but change your mind, for it is a shame that you should first take him to husband that hath been the overthrow of our Brother the Green Knight: next a Christian, whom our Laws do abhor.

For

Forbear (I say therefore) and be ruled by my direction, and I will raise your fortunes, by matching you unto that puissant King *Trampars*. Forget, I say, these two French men, for shortly thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the head. Brother (*qd. Clerimond*) it behoveth me to obey you, for I plainly see I must let go the thing I cannot have: for whereas force constraineth, fear hath little power, and necessity often preventeth truth. These discourses finished, *Ferragus* departed with his *Queen* and other attendants, and entering the great Hall, with very much honor and reverence they received the *Lady Clerimond*, the *Queen* thus saying unto her: Sister, welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight of you. *Lady* (*qd. Clerimond*) I give you millions of thanks, but know this, that I am right heavy and sad for two Christian Knights that are come hither under color of friendship and love, brought over by my brothers fair promises, and now to be violently handled, as to be thrown into a dungeon, and also threatened to death. This Sister, even this, wounds my soul, and splitteth my very heart in sunder. Alas Sister, pity me, for one of these Knights should be my Husband, amongst all men living he is the comeliest, valiantest, and hardiest Knight that lives upon the face of the earth. Again (dear Sister) by force of arms hath he conquered his *Foe*, and won my love, wherefore *Lady*, pity my distressed estate, and let me see that Christian *Lady*, which you have so long kept within this Castle. Sister (said the *Queen*) I shall gladly consent to your desire herein, and in bringing them together, the *Lady Bellyfant* said thus unto her: *Lady*, what is your will with me, speak on, for I would gladly hear any thing you have to say? Then thus, I bring you joyful tydings, and yet the end of my tale will be as sorrowful as the beginning is joyful: Know this, I am not ignorant of your estate and dignity: for you are Sister to *Peppin King of France*, and Wife unto the *Emperour of Grece*, who wrongfully banished you his Country. Soon after your exile, you were in your travel delivered of two fair Sons in a Forrest, one of which was taken from you by a Bear, and the other you lost you know not how. All this is true. Now *Lady*, your Children are both alive, and I can tell you where to find them. At these words *Bellyfant* fell into a swoon for joy, *Clerimond* quickly recovered to get again, and then the *Lady* said unto her:

her : Fair Damosel, how came all these things to thy understanding ? Then Clerimond related the whole story, how Ferragus her brother by subtilty and Treason had put them into a Dungeon. Bellysant hearing her two Children were imprisoned by Ferragus, made great lamentation, insomuch that the Wife of Ferragus entered the Hall, to understand the cause of these mournful clamours. Clerimond told the Queen all from point to point : Well (said the Queen) be appeased, and dissemble the cause from the King, for if he have any knowledge hereof, it will make him rather so much the worse, than better affected, either to them or you.



CHAP. XXXIV.

How Pacolet the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.

AS these three Ladies were conferring about this matter, into the Chamber came Pacolet the Dwarf, that was new come from his wooden Horse. When Clerimond saw him, she wept bitterly, and said: Alas Pacolet, what injury have I done unto thee, that thou shouldest thus rob me of all my joys at once, for I am well assured, that thou mightest have given the warning of all these miseries. Lady (quoth Pacolet) be not so highly displeased at me, for I protest I am ignorant of all that hath beided you : but seeing you have begun these bitter bickerings, I swear my Art shall utterly forsake me, but I will find a remedy for you to avenge your self, and to that purpose, I here vow all my service unto you and Valentine while life doth last. Friend (quoth the Lady Bellysant) if thou canst but free my two children out of Prison, I shall acknowledge my self highly indebted unto thee, and I will recompence thy labours every way: Lady (quoth Pacolet) no more take you care, but comfort your self, and ere long you shall well perceive my crafty work to take such effect by my Art, that you shall have cause to remember me while you have a day to live.

C H A P. XXXV.

How by Art Pacolet set free *Valentine* and *Orson* from the Prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother and the fair *Cleimond*.

IT chanced upon a day that *Ferragus* made a great Feast for all his Nobles, which day they passed in such revelling and mirth, that the night growing late, they all betook themselves to rest. Being all asleep, Pacolet was still watchful to give the Ladies content, and coming to a great Tower, whose gates were brass, and surely locked, by his enchantment the gates flew open, and he entered thereinto: Anon he came unto the door of the prison, where the Ladies two sons lay bound, and as soon as he touched the door, the locks brake, and flew open as before. The two Princes lying there in a dark dungeon, and hearing the door open, were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but present death, and at last *Valentine* began to weep, but *Orson* said unto him; Take courage Brother; for it behoveth us to prepare for death, and sith it is so, he that first entrencheth here to lay hold upon me, shall dearly pay for his adventure: With that he laid hold of a great Iron Bar that lay there by, but at last Pacolet spake unto them, saying; Lords, fear me not, for I am come to set you free from forth this dungeon, wherefore make no noise but follow me, and before the morrow Sun, I shall bring you both unto your Mother: *Valentine* at this speech rejoiced greatly, but *Orson* beholding him with an austere look, would not give any credit to his words. Pacolet at the fierce look of *Orson*, was much affraid, inasmuch that he gave back, but by the words of *Valentine* he was much re-comforted, and *Orson*'s fury abated. After this, Pacolet led them into the chamber where as these two sorrowful Ladies sat in mournful tears. When he came unto the door of the chamber, it was fast locked, but he did easily open it. After they entered in, Pacolet so wrought with his charmes, that all

all that were thereabouts fell into a heavy and dead sleep: & knew nothing of their coming. Being in the chamber whereas the two heavy Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but she suddenly fell in a swoond, speaking unto them never a word: But the Lady Clerimond pittiously said thus unto Valentine: Alas (fair Knight) this is the Mother that bore you, who for the love and joy of you, is fallen into this grievous extasie. Then Valentine embraced her, and took her up in his arms, and Orson also clasped her about the middle, saying unto her, Sweet Mother speak unto me, and then he kissed her tender lips, but all this while she spake never a word, but at last they all three fell flat upon the earth into a swoond, and there lay panting for breath a long season. While the fair Lady Clerimond stood over them bewailing this strange accident: At last, coming to themselves again, the Mother said unto them, weeping: Alas, my Children, for your sakes have I suffered more pain and anguish than ever poor woman was able to undergo, and you two the onely cause of these my dolorous passions, but such the gods have so ordained that I may once see you, & embrace you before my death, all my griefs are vanished, and become no burthen unto me. But tell me, how have you been preserved ever since your birth, and in what Country and with whom you have remained? for it would glad me to hear the events thereof. At last (she having ended her words) Valentine began the relation of all their miseries, even to that present hour. Valentine having touched his tale, by which the Emperors Eollyant plainly knew that they were both her natural Children, weeping with many more tears than before, she would fain again have fallen into a swoond, but Pacolet prevented her, who was at that instant in the Chamber, saying unto her, Lady, leave these laments, and let us think how we may depart from Portugal, and so rid us out of the subjection of King Ferragus: Alas, said Clerimond, my love, remember the Oath that you made unto me: to take me for your wife. Dear Lady (quod Valentine) what I have promised I will performe; but at this present the love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me near the heart.

These words of Valentines being ended, Orson said unto Pacolet, Go open me the door of Ferragus, and with these hands I will work his final downfall and overthrow. Pacolet answereth, Come,

go along with me, and I shall gladly open it, to fulfil this your desire: but know this, if you murder him you shall lose the love of my Brother the Green Knight, who may divers and sundry ways do us pleasure. Lady (qb. Valentine) you say truth, and I agree unto this your wise and discreet motion, for I would not have you guilty of such a crime; as the death of this your Brother, for to gain the world.

At this very hour they departed the City, and Pacolet opened the gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a Ship ready rigged, and having a fair gulf of wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of Clerimond, whither being once come, they refreshed themselves with pleasures.



C H A P. XXXVI.

How Valentine and Orson escaped the Castle of Ferragus, and sailed with the two Ladies into Aquitaine.

Valentine being come and safely arrived at this Castle of Clerimond, could not so content himself therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of Ferragus, fearing lest he should follow them and put them into fresh dangers. Therefore, to prevent all occasions of further mischief, he got him down unto one of the Ports, causing the Mariners there present, to victual their ship afresh, and also provided good store of Munition, to be in readines upon all occasions. Having thus done, he returned again unto the Castle without any suspicion: being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother Belysane, and the Lady Clerimond, saying: that he would suddenly depart for Greece towards Constantinople, to see his Father the Emperour, who without any just cause had banished his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with Orson and Pacoler.

The next day they took shipping and went on their voyage, and at break of day the Taylor, according to his accustomed manner, went to the tower to visit the Prisoners, and to bear them their allowance.

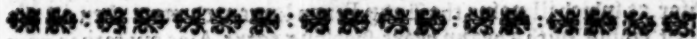
had spent many days, & effected nothing, they returned every man to his home, and retired from their fruitless toyle. Whilst Ferragus and his forces were thus following the flowing seas, Valentine and Orson were entered the City of Aquitaine: being there, they dissembled their estate, & as private persons lodged in the house of a burgher of the Town. Valentine would gladly have gone into the Palace of Duke Savary, but Orson thereunto would not agree, for he having a further reach of policy, said thus unto him: Brother, I find by my small experience, that women are variable and unconstant, therefore hearken to my advice, let us onely see and try, how the Lady *Ferron* standeth affected towards me, and herein we shall try her constancy. Brother (qu. Valentine) I shall right willingly agree hereto: then Orson took upon him the habit of a *Kn. Errant*, & entered the great Hall, taking Pacolet & *Montfort* for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he saluted him with all reverence. The Duke observing well his behaviour, took it to be Orson that thus had demeaned himself, but after finding by his speech he was like to be deceived, he said, Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly adventure to do you service, in any manner you will employ me. Knight (qu. the Duke) I accept your proffered service, and will give you salary enough to content you, inasmuch that if you will not depart my service before I give leave, I shall give you such riches, as all the stock you came from could never raise. Then said the Great Duke, qu. Orson) for your liberal heart, and I here vow, ere I depart, to deserve your love and liberty.

Whereupon the Duke requested him to visit his Court, and in lieu of his good will, he allowed him in present pay one hundred & fifty pounds, making him withal a Companion for the Court. Orson thus preferred by the Duke, behaved himself worth his preferment, & ever so carried himself as meat, & every man belighted in his company. Amongst the rest the fair Lady *Ferron*, that was sworn his wife, grew wondrous heavy and sad, but she knew not why, for she knew not that it was Orson whom she had beheld, & thus passed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, Orson took his leave to that time, and returned to his lodging, where his Mother and the Lady *Clorinda* did then take up their residence. Orson being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related to them the whole

whole passage between him and the Duke, which when they heard, they much resoyced thereat. But this joy lasted not long, for there came sudden news, & Ferragus had sent Messengers to the Duke of Aquitain to proclaim open wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome news, presently provided both men and provision, to resist so proud an enemy. Ferragus, according to his promise, suddenly arrived before Aquitain, then in the very same place; whereas his brother the Green Knight had pitched pavilions, when that Orson became his vanquisher. By this means much hurt redounded unto the country & provinces thereabout, whereas the Sarazens army lay in a readyness, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to subdue and over-run the whole country before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) & worthy Duke of Aquitain, being of a magnanimous courage, assembled all his men of war, & being thus put in a readyness, he suddenly issued out of the town, venturing to raise the siege. Amongst the rest Valentine and Orson made their appearance, being also accompanied with little Pacolet; but these three were not known unto any at that time, where we will leave them a little to hear what followeth.



CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Duke of Aquitain was taken Prisoner in the battel by Ferragus, and how Orson set him free by the help of Pacolet.

The Duke of Aquitain calling to mind the huge Army of the Sarazens that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present battel the next morrow: so calling up all his forces, & placing them in readyness, there happened a bloody battel before the City of Aquitain, & many a brave Leader on both sides, there lost their lives. The Giant Ferragus himself was amongst the thickest, gathering himself as near as he could unto his standard-bearer. The son of Orson being in this battel, wore a valiant courage, that is to say, Baudouin, Boudry, William, Guleram, Anthony the

good Marshal, and Gloriam the hardy : all near about the Duke of Aquitain, & they that had the chief command throughout his Camp. This happening, the Christians were forced to fall back, whereby the Duke himself was begirt with enemies, so that none might come to succour him, yet in the midst of all these dangers, he bare himself most valiant, and still cryed, Aquitain, Aquitain, my noble hearts fight on for Aquitain, but in the end, all little abailed, Ferragus having once gotten a sight of him, came near, & at last took him Prisoner, & led him to his Pabilion. Ferragus having thus bestowed the Duke, came up again to the battell, which struck such an amazement into the hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the field, especially, because they had lost the Duke their Lord & Master. Valentine & Orson seeing them thus to waver, came up with all the speed they could, & cryed out unto them with a loud voice: Valiant Knights, and men of Aquitain, shew your selves men, run not away, in time of extremity, for if you do, lamentable will be your reproach: be hardy and couragious once again, and let us try the fortune of the day.

These two knights having thus done speaking, the people began afresh to gather up their scattered forces, & turned their faces once more upon the Sarazens, with a double courage. By this time tidings was brought into the City, that the Duke was taken Prisoner, at which ill news the Lady Fezon lamented more then all the rest, saying, with a heavy heart, shedding tears, Alas my father, now is your life in hazard, for from these Sarazens, there is no hope of any mercy. Farewel sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left as a dejected Orphant. Alas Orson my love, thy long and tedious staying abroad doth much distemper me, for if thou were here present, there would be some hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, helving forth his way with his sword. Orson on the other side was not idle, for he had taken an Oath, that either he would free the Duke from captivity, or leave his body amongst the rest. Perce the Magician, & Dwarf, promised Orson aid and assistance at hand, and thus all builed, and with hand wearied, Orson put spurs to his horse, and ran violently through the battell, and escaped. Orson and Perce the

ing past danger, hurled away their own shields, and hanged about their necks the Shields of the Sarazens, set forth with the image of Mahomet in them, and by this subtilty they passed quite through the Camp of the Pagans (for Pacolet could speak their language right well) now are they come unto the Pavillion of Ferragus: where the Duke lay in bands, thinking to have released him. But Pacolet perceiuing the number of his Guard to be so mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his charms into a deadly sleep. Being thus made fast, came unto the Duke, and said unto him, Come with us, and presently mount this horse, for we are come to set you free from the power of *Ferragus*; if ye doubt what I am, I am that Knight which in your Hall demanded wages of you, and you allowed me liberally. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the power of all the Pagans here assembled, for I will surely be your guide through the wicked rout. Knight (quoth the Duke) you are a welcome man to my distressed bands, and therefore for your dangerous enterprize in working my deliverance, I shall give you my fair daughter *Ferox* in Marriage.

Indeed (I must confess) I had given her not long since to a K., but he was wild & savage: and he never had the use of his tongue: but by reason of his long absence, I fear he hath won some other Lady, and left my daughter Husbandless, but to be short, take her for this thy noble act, and with her, I freely give thee half of my Dukedom. Thanks (quoth the Knight) such a gift is not to be refused, but let that pass, and let us make ready for our escape, that we may return unto your discomfited forces. Having thus said, they all three took their way back again thro' the Camp of the enemy, without disturbance. All this while was Valentine in the Army, demanding what was become of his brother Orson, but when he found no man that could tell him tydings of him, he grew wondrous heavy and sad, fearing lest he had been slain in the conflict of the battel.

Thus passed Valentine from place to place, to find out his brother Orson, and with a resolute mind rushed a fresh into the battel, & as a man distracted, he laid so forcibly about him, that noo Pagan was able to stand against him. Ferragus spying him so valiant, came up close to him, & having gotten him once in thall, never left him until he had slain his horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his Horse, Ferragus seized on him as his Prisoner, causing him to be bound hand and foot, taking an Oath by Mahomet: that he should not escape from death, though there were not a man more to be had throughout the whole land; but this Oath was broken, for as he was leading his Prisoner Valentine fast bound along the field, Orson, Pacolet, and the Duke of Aquitaine, all upon him, Orson crying out, Let him not escape us, and therewithal put spurs to his horse, and ran so fiercely against the Pagan Ferragus, that both he and Valentine his Prisoner fell to the earth. The Giant Ferragus quickly regained his feet, and left Valentine, who fearing began to run away. Orson espied him, cried out, Brother, return again and fear nothing. Whereupon Valentine was again mounted. When the Christians saw the Duke again at liberty, their courages increased, their forces doubled, and with joy of heart they cried out aloud. Long live Duke Aquitaine. This sudden noise much amazed the Sarazens, insomuch that Ferragus was glad to flee and raise his siege. When the men of Aquitaine heard the retreat, they recovered themselves again into the City. The battel being thus ended, Valentine and Pacolet returned to their lodgings, but Orson went along with the Duke to his Palace: whither being come, he called before him all his Nobles and his Daughter Fezon, being all assembled, he called Orson unto him, demanding of him his name, Sir, qu. he, I am called Gregory: then said the Duke thus before them all, Lords, I give you to understand, that above all men living, I am most beholding to this Knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for you Daughter Fezon, it is my pleasure, that above all men you accept this Knight for your husband: Daughter, you have good cause to love him well, for by him am I made a living Father unto you.

The Nobles there assembled, agreed willingly herunto, affirming, that she could do no less than submit to her fathers will, and so rather, considering the dangers that by him had been prevented. Orson hearing all this, still concealed himself till he had further assured the constancy of the Lady Fezon: acquainting his other Valentine whom he purposed to do, as entered in this next Chapter.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How Orson tryed the constancy of the Lady Feron, before he married her.

Orson having a desire to try the constancy of Fezon, at last replied thus unto *h*e Duke, Sir, for the honour you have vouchsafed me, I rest ever thankful for the same, but for your Daughter, it were most requisite that I should see how she stands affected towards me: and likewise fit for her to make choice of such a man as is of equal birth with hers, and therefore if it please you let her answer for her self. *With these words he entred into the Chamber of fair Fezon, and sitting down by her, he took her by the hand, and said unto her:* Lady, your beauty hath so intangled my heart, that without your favour and love, I am as an unfortunate man: Your Father is willing that I should enjoy you, if you please so also, then may I justly vaunt, that I have won the fairest Lady living, and will prove a constant Knight whilst I have breath, If you consent to this, let us embrace each other. Knight (*quoth the Lady*) you ought to forbear, for all your labour is lost: It is true I love all Knights, yea, and all good men too, in the rule of honor, but as for him whom I mean to make my Husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why but fair Lady (*quoth Orson*) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to please you: sir (*said the*) it is reason that I obey my Father, but if so be my Father will constrain me to break my Faith, and forsake him that vanquished the Green Knight, I will rather leave my Father, than once offer to break my Faith. Lady (*quoth Orson*) I wonder how you can set your affections on such a man, for he is of a Wild nature and disposition, besides (*as your Father reporteth*) is dumb and cannot speak a word: True (*quoth the Lady*) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithful affection, to whom my Faith is already fixed: and therefore stay your suit, for I will never alter nor change my mind from him.

Orlon hereat grew wond'rous joyful to hear the true answer of
Feboz, and took his leave of her, and came again to the Duke.

saying: Great Duke, I am returned from your Daughter, for she hath given me an utter denial, saying that she will never have another husband than he that conquered the Green Knight. Quoth the Duke, care not for her denial, for she shall not rule her own will, but be you a little patient, and this day will I talk with her my self. Thanks mighty Duke, quoth he, I am much beholden unto you; and so left the Court, and came to the lodging of his Brother Valentine, to whom he related the whole manner of his proceedings with his Lady Fezon: Brother (said Valentine) you now know and find her faithful, but let us go together to the Pallace, for I am assured the Duke will give me good entertainment. Sir (said Orson) do as you please: Valentine clad himself in rich apparel, and Orson put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entred into Aquitain, and thus accompanied with Pacolet, they went towards the Pallace: And as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his Daughter, in the presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to neglect my command thus, in rejecting the Knight, of whose love I have had sufficient tryal, for he hath saved me alive? Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to sollicite me no further in this matter, seeing you know assuredly that I have given my promise to him that vanquished the Green Knight. What greater shame can there be, than to break my promise which I have made already? If by you I am constrained, the danger light upon you, only let me be innocent. As they were thus discoursing, the Duke espied Valentine and Orson coming towards him, whom he embraced and honourably entreated. Orson having saluted the Duke, passed toward the Lady Fezon, who received him with a smiling countenance, and said thus unto him: You are welcome above all others, your long absence hath greatly grieved me, and had you not come in now as you did, my Father had bestowed me upon another Knight. Love (quoth Orson) I have learned to speak since I was with you last, and am the very same man, that yesterday courted you in your chamber, all which pleased the Lady exceedingly. So Orson entred into a Chamber, and put on rich apparel, being thus attired, he entred the Hall. The Duke hearing of his coming, embraced him kindly, and said: Son, pardon my rash-

ness

them in my behalf, that I am an innocent Lady. Moreover, if there be such a man breathing, that will but once open his mouth to the contrary, fight thou for me, and justly maintain my unspotted chastity. Mother (quoth Valentine) all this and more I shall perform, and ere many months have run their course, I shall cause my Father to receive you again, and ask you pardon for his rash proceeding. So now he takes his last farewell of his dear Mother, with this charge, that so soon as they were arrived, he should send Pacolet to bring tidings of all that had happened.

Now taketh he his way to the lodging of Pacolet, whither being come, Pacolet made ready his Blouden Horse, and mounting Valentine behind him, turned the pin the same way he would take, and suddenly they were mounted in the Air so swiftly, that ere the morning at noon, they were in the sight of Constantinople. Valentine was wondrous joyful, that he was so near the place he so much desired to see, and by the help of Pacolet the Enchanter came that night even to the great Hall, where the Emperour accompanied with King Pepin sat both at supper. Valentine being come into such an unknown presence, grew very bashful, but the Green Knight sitting at the Table, with the Emperour and King Pepin, espied Valentine and knew him, so did King Pepin take knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperour: Great Emperour, behold here one of your own blood, a valiant Knight, and your one natural Son. The Emperour hearing this, was much amazed, and rising from the Table, made towards him, and kissed him, the Green Knight was the first that took him in his arms, and embraced him, then King Pepin next, and lastly the Emperour his father, who was greatly ashamed at his foul fact, in bewitching his unspotted and guileless wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old servant Blandiman, who well observed Pacolet ever since he saw him in Portugal, and at last he went unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistress, the Lady Bellysant? Pacolet satisfied him in all his demands, so that exceeding great joy and gladness was heard about the City for the Love of Valentine, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperours Son, the valiant Knight, Valentine seeing such continual racours of all estates ga-
 2 thered

thiering about him, he said unto them: Lords, Knights, and Barons here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my person, I cannot yeild unto you any other recompence but thanks, and especially unto my Uncle King *Pepin*, who hath ever fostered me even from my cradle, and had it not been for him, I had perished by reason of a sharp edict published by my Father, who by the false suggestion of a dead traitor, banished my Mother from his bed and country. Wherefore to clear her innocency, I (as her natural Son) offer my body in combat against any false Traitor whatsoever.

CHAP. XLII.

How *Valentine* and the Green Knight were taken prisoners in the batel of *Constantinople*, by the *Souldan Moradin* and his men.

When the Emperour perceived his Son to be so much moved for the dishonour which was done unto his Mother the Empress, he wept for very grief of heart, and said thus unto his Son: Alas my Son, I have no doubt of thee to be my Son, neither of thy Man-hood, in offering to revenge her wrongs upon the Traitor that accused her, but he is fallen already by the sword of a Merchant, in the presence of thy Uncle *Pepin*, my self, and divers others of high state. At his death he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time I have sent divers and sundry Messengers, into all Nations, to hear tydings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired wish: therefore I pray thee if thou canst, tell me some glad tydings of her. Father (quoth *Valentine*) I know somewhat, for yesternight I both saw her, and spake with her in *Aquitaine*, telling him besides, that *Pauolet* the Cut-throat, had secretly brought him thither by Art, rather than good speed. The Emperour hearing such glad some news from his Son, caused great triumphs throughout the City of *Constantinople*. When the Sarazens heard such words and rebelling within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himself in a readiness. The *Souldan* roundly bryght *Constantinople*, summing up all the Inhabitants most lamentable to behold. At last these tydings came to the ears of *Valen-*
tine

tine and the Brion Knight, who arming themselves, came into the City, and said: Lords, you well perceive the extremity in which we are, be yet courageous and stand to it, and there is hope of recovery, wherefore follow my counsel, issue forth some number of you to forrage for some victuals, whilst I accompanied with 2000 men, set upon the Sarazens: They did as he advised them, & within short time they behaved themselves so valiantly, that they gained from the enemy 300 Chariots laden with all sorts of victuals. Having thus seized the victuals, they were conducting the same into the City, but the Soldan foreboded at these his losses, got between the City and them, thinking to have defeated them from entrance, but King Pepin espying their policy, and how they had stopped up the passages, presently couched his spear, and ran upon the Soldan so violently, that he bare the proud Pagan to the earth, then pulling out his sword, he smote at one Archillon a very valiant commander with such fury, that he struck him out of his saddle,



Valentine and the Green Knight perceiving the great courage of King Pepin, and what fortune he had in the field, at that present entered freshly into the battell, and with a resolute courage even in the presence of the Soldan, he heaved down the chief Standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being overthrowen, Valentine addressed him against the Soldan himself, and with his Spear he so encountered him, that he so foiled him, as he could scarcely sit his Horse. Moroldas one of the chief commanders were slain; and his Admiral taken prisoner by the Green Knight, with other exploits performed on both parts. But mark what followed, these two knights were so triumphant in their uncertain victory, that they pressed the enemy so far within danger, that when they would return, they could not, and so consequently were taken Prisoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Soldan.

The Soldan having gotten them in bands, insulted proudly over them, and with an Oath he vowed by his Mahomer, that they should never escape with life, but gave present commandment to raise up a Gibbet before the City walls, and presently in the sight of all his enemies to hang them up. Now were Valentine and the Green Knight in a great fear, but we will leave them a little, and return to those Christians that had gotten great booty of victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithal, by reason that they were encountered by the Sarazens Army. In which encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days bickering. And at last they espying what desperate case they stood in, with one consent issued forth men, women, priests, clerks and all degrees. When the Pagans saw their multitudes, they were forced to retire themselves into their Tents, and by that means the Christians obtained all their prey of victuals, & safely conveyed it into the City, although with the loss of many a life. The Emperor was exceeding heavy for the loss of his War-like men, especially for his Son Valentine and the Green Knight, so heavy and so sad also was the worthy King Pepin. Pacolet seeing these two Peers take the matter so heavily, recomforted them again, saying on this manner: Lords, leave off your lamentations, for it shall fare better with Valentine and the Green Knight than you can imagine. Friend (said the

Empe-)

Emperour) if thy words prove true, I will advance thy estate. Sir (said he) shortly you shall make tryal of my love and respect towards you : so he betok him to his wooden Horse, and departed towards the Soldans Host, and came thither just at the instant that the Soldan came to judge Valentine & the Green Knight to death; and how it was prevented, you shall hear in the Chapter following.



CHAP. XLIII.

How *Pacolet* by enchantment delivered *Valentine* and the Green Knight out of the bondage of the Soldan, and how *Pacolet* couzened the Soldan when he had him upon his Horse, and instead of carrying him into *Portugal*, brought him into *Constantinople*, where he was hanged.

ALL being assembled, as aforesaid, the Soldan began thus to speak: Lords, here I present before you these that must in-cumber the Mighty Gyant *Ferragus*, and that which most you ought to respect, is, that one of them hath forsaken his Religion; and for that cause my Judgement is, that he be sent to *Ferragus*, and from him receive punishment fitting his offence: nay, said the other Sarazens, let us never do so, but let them both bear suffer death to morrow morn. Lords (quoth the Soldan) be it so. These resolutions thus agreed upon, the Soldan entred his Pavillion to supper, where being set, *Pacolet* came and saluted him in the name of Mahomet. *Pacolet* (quoth the Soldan) thou art welcome, how fareth *Ferragus* my dear friend? Sir (said *Pacolet*) right well, and by me sends glad some tydings, if you please to hear them. Right gladly (said the Soldan) I preshee begin, then *Pacolet* drew him aside, out of the hearing of his attendants; and said: Sir, know this, I am lately come out of *Portugal*, and sent by the fair Wife of *Ferragus*, whose heart is on fire with the love she beareth to you: long hath she concealed these her affections, but having no power longer to keep close the closet of her breast, she hath committed to me her love, her trust, and what she dares not utter to any other but my self. Again, *Ferragus* is in *Aquitain*, so that no opportuni-

ty would be omitted. Therefore come along with me, and stay no longer to expostulate, for upon my horse will we suddenly arrive in *Portugal*, and bring you to the fair Ladies sight. *Pacolet*, thou hast more gladed my heart, then all the worldly treasure can afford: true it is, she is the only woman living that ever I aimed at, but never knew I how to effect my wishes. The *Soldan* caused *Pacolet* to be highly feasted, so on the morrow they went on towards their journey, but mark what followed: *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* you must conceive were both in the Pavillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a sight of *Pacolet*, but durst not make any show thereof: and *Pacolet* on the other side, shew'd himself a flatterer to the *Soldan*, in eating, drinking, and rebelling at the *Soldans* table, and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the *Soldan*, in hearing of all, Sir, how dare you venture your noble person so near to this *Green Knight*, and not rather give him his desert, for of all men living he is most dangerous, first, for the wrongs that he committed against his brother *Ferragus*, bereaving him of *Clerimond*, & giving her in Marriage to a Christian Knight, next he hath renounced his *Mahomet*: These things considered, it is fit that he should dye, were there no more men living. Friend (quoth the *Soldan*) to morrow morning, they shall both be hanged; then the *Soldan* commanded the Prisoners to be strongly guarded upon pain of death, and so withdrawing him to his chamber, left *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* under the conduct of those that most desired their deaths.

In the dead time of the night came *Pacolet* unto *Valentine* and the *Green Knight*, and first freed them of their bands, and by art so charmed all their Warders (who slept securely) that he brought them past all danger. Having thus set them at liberty, about the dawning of the day, he came to the *Soldans* tent, crying out so loud to him that he awaked him, & then *Pacolet* began thus to say unto him: Sir, little appeareth your love to the Wife of *Ferragus*, seeing for her sake you are loath to break one hours sleep: whereunto the *Soldan* replied, thou hast done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a most fearful dream, & thus it was: Methought a Crow did bear me swiftly through the air, and as she was flying away with me, another great Bird met me, and struck at me with

his

his bill so hard, that the blood forthwith issued out in abundances, now this dream maketh me much to fear that *Ferragus* hath some intelligence of my desires, and means to revenge himself upon me. Away Sir (quoth *Pacolet*) with this childish fear, will you therefore neglect the love of such a beautiful Lady? By *Mahomet* (qr. the *Soldan*) thou sayest truth, and calling his Chamberlain to make him ready, give him this charge. Sirra, be secret, if thy Uncle *Bryan* ask for me, tell him I am gone a little way to disport with *Pacolet*. Then *Pacolet* took the *Soldan* behind him upon his wooden horse, and turning the pin, the horse rose up into the air so swiftly, that in a little space they were come to Constantinople, even in the Emperors Palace. The *Soldan* perceiving *Pacolets* horse to make a stay, said thus unto him: Friend, are we at our journey's end? Yea, and fear nothing, for we are now in *Portugal*, in the Palace of King *Ferragus*. By *Mahomet* (said the *Soldan*) the devil hath born us thither very quickly. Well (said *Pacolet*) enter you into the Great Hall of this Palace, and in the mean space I will haste me to the Chamber of the Lady, and presently cause you to be brought unto her bed: do so, quoth the *Soldan*, for I am even well near ravished with joy, and shall think each minute an hour, till I have my desire.

Now sitteth the *Soldan* in the Hall, attending the coming back of *Pacolet*, while he in the mean space, maketh towards the chamber wherein the Emperor lay, being come to the door, he gave a great blow against it, insomuch, as the Chamberlain asked who it was that thus presumed to disturb the Emperors rest? Friend (qr. *Pacolet*) fear not, for I am *Pacolet*, newly come from the *Soldans* Host, where I have set at liberty both *Valentine* & the Green Knight, who were condemned to die. Besides, say unto the Emperor, that I have brought along with me the *Soldan* himself, to be in *Portugal*: Wherefore, he may now be revenged on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved death. The Chamberlain told the Emperor all these tydings, and King *Pepin* also, so arming themselves, they came into the Hall, where the *Soldan* sat: the *Soldan* perceiving himself betrayed, cried out with a loud voice: Thou false *Pacolet*, Traitor to my person, I vow to be revenged upon thee for thy disloyal practise towards me, and thee.

withal drew forth his Sword, and like a Mad man ran up and down the Hall, striking the very stones so fiercely, that he made the fire to flye from those fenceless walls. As he was in this madding fit, the Attendants endred towards him with Torches. The Soldan espying them, defending himself so fiercely, that he slew the Squire that attended upon King Pepin : this act of his, fired the courage of the King, that he made a blow at him; and felled him to the earth. Being fallen, they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came Valentine and the Green Knight, who finding the Soldan there in bands, was very joyful.

The Emperoz and the King seeing Valentine, were joyful for his deliverance, giving great thanks to Pacolet for his care over his Son, and withal said, Pacolet, one strain more of thy horse must I demand; you shall Sir (qd. Pacolet) and if you will get up behind me, I shall instantly transport you into hell. But Lords, let that pass, and return unto the death of the Soldan, for if he escape your hands at this time, a world of miseries will follow: so that very hour they proceeded to Judgement, and commanded him to be hanged on the greatest Tower of the Palace, even in the very sight of all his Pagan Host.

This done, the Pagans stood as men confounded and amazed to see him there hanging, & wondered how he came within the City, but at last Bryan his Uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traitor Pacolet. After they had long lamented the death of the Soldan, they gathered themselves to Counsel, and in his stead chose his Uncle Bryan Soldan. After all these things done, Pacolet took his leave of the Emperoz, and returned into Aquitain, to comfort the Lady Clerimond, as he promised: but before his departure Valentine came unto him and said; Pacolet, at your coming into Aquitain, salute from me my Mother *Belysant*; and my loving Lady *Clerimond*, my Brother *Orsin*, and the good Duke of *Aquitain*, with the rest of the Nobles, and above all the rest, deliver this to my Mother, by which she shall understand our whole proceedings here. Sir, said Pacolet, all this shall I willingly perform, so taking his Horse, he leapt upon him, and he flew up into the air as swift as smoke.

The next morning Pacolet was come to his journey's end, and

finding the Duke of Aquitain, the Emperess Bellyfant, Orson, and Clerimond, all in safety, he saluted them all, and delibered their Letters. who said, Lady, your Son *Valentine* greeteth you well, shewing you that the Emperor would gladly see you, confessing his rash credit given to a Traitor about your banishment, who hath requited it with the loss of his life, wherefore he promiseth, that so soon as he can free his Country from the incursions of the Sarazers, to come himself in person, and then forthwith bring with him the Green Knight, whom *Orson* vanquished. The Lady hearing these joyful tydings, suddenly fell in a swoond; but *Orson* perceiving it, suddenly snatched her up into his arms, and being somewhat come unto her self, he said: My Child, I am justly overcome with joy, in that I understand I am proved an Innocent of such abominable crimes as I was falsely accused of: but I long to see the Emperor, whom if I might but once again behold, I should not longer desire to live, for I am well enough revenged, and my accuser hath justly satisfied a most shameful death for his treachery.



CHAP. XLIV.

How King *Trompart* come before *Aquitain*, to succour *Ferragus* and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*. And how the King of *Inde* caused King *Trompart's* head to be struck off, and how he would have married with *Clerimond*, and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the shape of a woman. And how *Ferragus* was slain, and how *Orson* and the Duke went with an army to *Constantinople*, to succour the Emperour, and how *Orson* led along with him his Mother. And how all the Pagans were slain before *Constantinople*, and how the Emperour received his Son *Orson*, and his Wife *Bellyfant* with joy.

Pacolet being arrived in *Aquitain*, at that same time that King *Trompart* came thither to aid *Ferragus* against the Christians. At whose coming *Ferragus* began thus to salute him, Famous K
of

of your coming I am glad, hoping by your assistance to get back my Sister *Clerimond*, and to be revenged on all those that have detained her. *Ferragus* (said *B. Trompart*) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me *Adrimain* the Enchanter, whose skill shall confound *Pacolet* in his own Art. Thanks gentle King, I am much bound to you for your love, & if he can but give *Pacolet* into my hands, I shall reward him liberally. Sir (qd. *Adrimain*) put your trust in me, and so I take my leave, and so betok him to his Magick Art. Being provided of all things, amongst the rest, he laded himself with victuals, & took his way towards Aquitain; coming thither, he craved entrance of the gates to sell his victuals, which was easily granted. After he had sold all, he went into the Palace, where he chanced upon *Pacolet*, whom *Pacolet* knew well. *Adrimain* (qd. *Pacolet*) you are welcome, from whence come you, and what is your errand? Then (said *Adrimain*) you know that long I served King *Trompart*, yet by fate I am fallen into a great mischance, for one in his Court having smitten me, because I would not teach him the principles of my Art, I drew forth my knife, and killed him: Now fearing death, I am expelled the Court, and for this cause I fled towards you for succour, & will prove unto you a faithful servant, so you be pleased to accept of me. *Adrimain*, said *Pacolet*, I am content, let it be so, make thee good cheer, and be merry. As they were thus in their Cups, *Adrimain* saw the fair *Clerimond* pass through the Hall, who presently demanded what Lady it was: Then (said *Pacolet*) it is the Sister of *Ferragus*, who must be married to a right valiant Knight. Whilst they were thus in conference, came *Orson* unto them, and said: Gentlemen, I could gladly wish, that one of your Art would shew somewhat to delight the assembly.

At whose words, *Adrimain* drew up a Cup above a Pillar, in such wise that through the Palace (seemingly to all the company) ran a River, furnished with all sort of fish little & great. When the beholders saw this water to come so strongly against them, they were afraid of drowning; *Pacolet* beholding this feat, amongst the rest, begun a song, and in that song a Charm, that it seemed to all the beholders, that a great Hart ran thorow that River, overturning all things that stood in his way. After this Hart ran Runners with their Hounds. This made many of the beholders to say after,

after, thinking to have taken the Hart: but Pacolet by his Art made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This sport (qd. Orson) was very well performed, and so the company breaking up, Pacolet led Adrimain to his Chamber to be with him, but proved fatal, for toward midnight, Adrimain so enchanted all within the Court, and with them Pacolet; that he had time to work all that he desired. Afterward he went towards the house of Pacolet, and getting him, came into the Chamber of Clerimond, and by Art caused her to rise and make her ready, and setting her on the Horse behind him, came unto a window, turned a pin, and suddenly he arrived in the tent of King Trompart. Being come thither, he cryed out aloud, saying: Great King, sleep not, but hasten you hither, and you shall see the pleasant Lady *Clerimond*, whom I have stollen from *Aquidain*, and with her *Pacolet's* horse. Now, said the King, I well perceive thy love: is this the sister of *Ferragus*? yea, said Adrimain, and I have also stolln her away, and also betrayed *Pacolet* my fellow Magician, for he shall never be master of his horse again. I, but (said the King) art thou acquainted with the manner of his horse? O, long since worthy King, and by vertue of the Pin, how to govern him. Having thus made this known unto King Trompart, he thought to make experience of the Horse himself, and taking the Lady *Clerimond* behind him, would transport her into his own Country, and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his arms (for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted sleep), and set her on the Horse of wood. All this Adrimain was eye-witness of, and said thus unto him: My Lord, if you fail any jot of the true use of the horse, both your self and the Lady are in very great danger. Fear not that, (quoth Trompart) and so turning the pin, he mounted swiftly into the air, and before the next morning he was 200 miles on his way, but not at his journey's end, for when he waked the Lady *Clerimond* out of her own enchanted sleep, she seeing her self so deluded, fell suddenly into a swoond, this change struck to the heart of King Trompart, for he was afraid lest she had been dead, and so turning the pin he stopped the Horse in a fair green field by a fountain, then taking the Lady from the Horse, he laid her on the grass, and took a little water and cast it on her face,

face; and the Lady recovered, being recovered, she made such grievous lamentations; that King Trompart was well nigh out of his wits: within this place there was a shepherd, of whom King Trompart required somewhat to eat, which he gave unto the Lady, who eat thereof, and was refreshed: and at last being come again unto her speech, she weeping, uttered these words: Unhappy I above all creatures, for I have lost my joy by accursed treason. Alas *Valentine* my love, cursed be he that hath seperated us. Trompart hearing her so clamorous, reprobed her roundly, saying: Lady, leave off these foolish words of the Christian boy, or else I shall separate thy head from thy body: is it not better for thee to be my wife, that am sole Lord of all this Jurisdiction, then to have a beggerly start-up, that hath neither land nor living; and with these words he would have kissed her, but the Lady disdainning him, hit him with her fist upon the mouth.

This strange and unlookt for disdainfulness, put King Trompart into such an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and set her upon the Horse again, and turning the rein the contrary way, presently, instead of carrying her into his own Country, he lighted in Inde, in the midst of a market place, kept there 8 day: the people seeing such a strange sight, marvelled much thereat. The Lady Clerimond by this time knew the Horse to be *Pacolets* and said: Now am I falsely betrayed, and *Pacolet* robbed of his Horse, but my dear *Valentino*, he it is most sicketh at my heart, for now shall I never see thee more. Trompart (thought for all this that he had been in his own Country) still beating down her piteous lamentations with bitter words. But mark what followed, *Pacolet* was brought unto the King of Inde, of what had happened, who commanded them to be brought before him. But this fell out ill to King Trompart, for the King of Inde knew him well. King Trompart being come before the King of Inde, he bid him welcome, for you are he that put my Brother to death: wherefore I will be revenged on thee, and so caused his head to be stricken off. After the Lady was led into the Kings Palace, where he sat in his own Prison, and he thus said: Lady, I know now of whence you are, by the bright splendor of your face, it hath enamoured my heart, wherefore if so you please to be my Wife, I will make you

you Queen of all this spacious continent, Sir (quoth she) you speak graciously; but to take any man to Husband, I have made a solemn vow to refrain during the space of one whole Year, wherefore pleaseth it you to let my vow be accomplished, and that time being run out, then will I willingly consent thereto. Well, said the King, thy answer is resonable, let it be as thou hast said, perform thy vow, and remain within my Palace, and he commanded that her attendants should be as great as if she had been his Queen, allowed her a Chamber of state, into which Chamber she caused to be brought the wooden Horse that carried her thither, and being there, she placed it in the secretest place she could devise, and still desired she might be freed out of that danger. Now leave we her a while, and returne to Pacolet, and look back also to Aquitaine: and see the mourning that is made for the Lady Clerimond.

The night after Adrimain had betrayed Pacolet, great lamentations were made for the fair Clerimond, throughout the City of Aquitaine. Moreover, when Pacolet found Adrimain absent, he doubted more, and looking round about the Chamber, wherein the Horse stood, he suddenly missed it; all this so falling out, Pacolet fell into a most grievous passion, insomuch as had not Orson at that instant come in, he would have destroyed himself.

Pacolet being thus rescued by Orson, and beholding the general sorrow for the beauteous Lady Clerimond, he began thus to comfort them: Lords, I will not give over till I am revenged on that Traitor *Adrimain*, by whom we are all thus wronged. With all he departed, and apparelled himself like a gallant Knight, and took his way to the Heast of Ferragus. Being come among the Army, many Pagans prayed her for love, but evermore Pacolet refused himself, and said: Pardon me, I pray you, for I am promised already to the Enchanter *Adrimain*, and so they let her pass on. At last Pacolet came to the tent where *Adrimain* was, in which *Adrimain* now amazed, and was so deeply overcome in love that that night he retained him into his Chamber; but Pacolet, no whit to seek of his Giffes, made some what querantist, and said: My Lords, know this, I have been desired of many, but I think the worst the worthiest to be first served: Daughter (quoth *Adrimain*) fear nothing, make good cheer, and be merry, for I have a good

stomach

Stomach to thee, and will use thee well. Now he committed the maiden to one of his servants, to be served with all the dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feasted in the tent of Adrimain, while Adrimain is in the tent of Ferragus, Pacolet demanded of the servant of Adrimain what was become of King Trompart: The servant said, I think he is returned again into his own Countrey, and carried along with him the Lady *Clerimond* upon a horse of wood, that my Master had given him: Pacolet hearing this, was vexed at the heart. By this time was Adrimain come unto his tent, saying to Pacolet: Daughter, is it time to go to rest? see here is the bed we mean to sport in: your will be done, said Pacolet. Then Adrimain put off his cloaths, and went into the bed, Pacolet so enchanted him in so strong a sleep, that wake he could not till the morning. As he delt with Adrimain, so he did with all round about him, and putting off his womans attire, he clad himself in all the richest cloaths that Adrimain had, and after with his own sword cut off his head, and bear it away with him. Having thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of Ferragus, the which he found well guarded, and there by his Art, he also cast them all into a heavy sleep. This done, he entred into the Tent of Ferragus, where he suddenly made him leap out of his bed, and cloath him: and tying him in his girdle, made him run by his side like a Spaniel, till he came even to the very entrance of the gates of Aquirain.

When Pacolet was come to the gates of the Pallace, he found there the Duke himself, accompanied with many of his Barons, and espying Pacolet, they said unto him: Where is *Clerimond* that thou bringest not her again? He answered, Lords, patience a while, I cannot shew you all at once: know this, I am fully revenged on *Adrimain* for here I have brought his head, and here is *Ferragus*, who by my Art I have also surprized, as you may see. Then said Orson, You have done very well. Nay Lords, more yet have I to say, which is, I have enchanted asleep the whole host of *Ferragus*, therefore if ever you mean to have a resistless victory, go now. What say you, my Lords (quoth Orson) me thinks *Pacolet* hath well advised us, therefore let us go on; so they slaughtered all that lay

lay befoze them, and put Ferragus into a most filthy dark and loathsome Prison, until their return.

After this great slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into Aquitain, and there commanded to have the Giant Ferragus brought befoze him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted sleep, unto whom the Duke thus said: Ferragus, if thou wilt here forsake thy *Mahomet*, and receive Baptism, then thou shalt live: which if thou refuse to do, thou shalt surely dye. Know (said Ferragus) I had rather suffer a thousand deaths: so he was suddenly beheaded. After his death, Orson took leave of the Duke, and went towards Constantinople, to aid his father the Grecian Emperoz, and his Uncle King Pepin of France, against the unbelieving Sarazens, that had strongly besieged that City: but a little befoze his departing, the Duke said thus to him: Worthy Knight, sith you are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and bear you company. Orson was very joyful to hear him say so, and gave him thanks (so taking some small time to set things in readines, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy and valiant knight, who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way, the Emperess Belysant much lamented the hard usage of her Lord, but Orson pitying her, said: Mother, leave off your tears, and only joy in that you have been falsely accused, which now will much increase your honor: But I fear most our entrance into the City, which, as I hear, is much troubled with Sarazens. Nay (said Pacolet) fear not that, for I will work a device to enter, and myself will go before and tell them so. Do so (said Orson) and tell Valentine the hard fortunes of *Clerimond*: Nay (quoth Pacolet, not I) I will be no bearer of such sad tydings.

Now King Pepin and the Emperoz being strongly besieged, were in great distress for victuals within the City, and there was no way to be relieved, but by the sword. Then Valentine knowing their great necessity, accompanied with the Green Knight, and a worthy band of souldiers, issued out of Constantinople, and charged upon 200 Chariots of Victuals of the Pagans, and recovered the same with the death of all those that attended upon them. Having gotten this booty, they made their return towards Constantinople, thinking to recover the City, but they were begirt

round about : on the one side with the Soldan , and on the other side with the King of Araby, and thirdly, with a King called Afficion. Amongst these companions fell out a terribly bloody conflict, but Valentine in single fight killed the King of Dramagen, & the Knight Clarian. The Green Knight also behaved himself valiantly, for at one blow he struck off the shield arm of the King of Morien, and before that slew his Brother. But all this valor little availed ; for in the end they were both taken Prisoners, and led before the Soldan ; who having them in his possession, assembled fifteen Pagan Knights to adjudge them to death. Valentine being thus in bonds, greatly lamented the woful state of the Lady Clerimond, taking leave both of his father, Mother, Brother, and the rest, saying : I must now forsake you all, and never again behold your faces. The Green Knight seeing him so passionate, said : Let us dye in a good cause, and welcome death.

Now was the Soldan sat in his Chair of State, to proceed to Judgement : in the mean space, in comes Pacolet, in the midst of the throng, not known of any, and come and stood before the judgement seat, and kneeling down, said : Right dear sir, know I am a Messenger from your Brother Godart, the great King of Argier, who to your succour hath brought along with him, four mighty Kings, and by me requireth, on which part of your Army they shall be ranked.

Again he prays you, if you have any Christian Prisoners, to send them him, and he will send them into his Country to draw the plough, & here stands a couple of fit instruments for that purpose. The Soldan rejoiced at these tydings, and commanded he should be feasted for that night : mean time, Valentine and the Green Knight, were glad of Pacolet's company. In the dead time of the night, Pacolet went unto them, & giving to each of them a horse, unbound them, & had them follow him. Being out of the enemies reach, Pacolet said thus unto them : Lords, be comfortable, for in this land is assembled the Duke of Aquitain, and the Knight Orson, the noble Empress, and the Lady Fezzan : but, said Valentine, why cometh not the fair Clerimond ? then answered Pacolet, she would have come, but being Sea-sick, she was forced to return again to Aquitain : So Valentine for that time questioned no further with him.

Then

Then Pacolet advised them all to go into the City of Constantinople, and on the morrow, issue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the enemy. In the mean space I will on the other side so beset my self, that the Host of the warlike Duke, shall come up, and give a fresh assault. Now the Soldan seeing this, shall imagine it to be his Brother, the King of Arger.

Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast well advised, and so it shall be effected. Thus they departed; Pacolet took his way to the Duke of Aquitain, who was yet on the Sea-shore, telling him that he had been with the Host of the Soldan, and how he had freed Valentine and the Green Knight. Then Orson answered Pacolet; there is yet one thing more to be done, and that is this, that to morrow in the morning, we assail the Host of the Sarazens on the one side, and they of Constantinople on the other side, and so by that means we shall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, shall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draw up his men in order, and so kept themselves that night.

The next morning King Emperor and King Pepin diligently brought forth their men to the fight, and divided their Host into five Battels. The first was delivered to Valentine, the second to the Green Knight, the third to King Pepin, the fourth to Milon Daugler, and the fifth to Sampson of Ocleance, one that bare in his banner a Bear of silver. At the break of day, these powers issued out of the City, to give an assault upon the enemy: being come into the field, they sounded their Instruments, the noise whereof so affrighted the Sarazens, that they ran out of their tents, crying an allarm, an allarm. This battel was extreme hot for Christians that day, yet the enemy had no cause to boast. King Pepin behaved himself so valiantly, & crept out to his Souldiers, St. Dennis. Then a Sarazen crept out to the Soldan, to retire, for the safeguard of their lives, for this might have we lost our King prisoners, and also there is coming against us a new supply of a great Army. Then the Soldan thought, that he had been betrayed, but yet he made forwards, & roused up their courage doubly, inasmuch that they enforced the Christians to fall back: but little abated their pride, for there came upon them the D. of Aquitain with his forces, and assailed them so fiercely, that they put to the sword all that did come

come before them, and thus the Christians conquered.

When the battel was ended, and the Christians had recovered up their scattered forces, Valentine & Orson came before the Emperor, doing unto him dutiful reverence. Father (quoth Valentine) here you may behold my Brother Orson, whom as yet you never knew, then the Emperor embraced him with tears, and so did the worthy King Pepin also. Fair Son (said the Emperor) you are welcome, for by you my joys are doubled. Then assembled together the Emperor, King Pepin, Valentine & Orson, the Green Knight, Blandiman, and Guidard the Merchant, he that vanquished the false Arch-Priest. All these with great triumph set out to visit the Tent of the noble Emperors Bellyfant and the Lady Fezon.

By this time they are come, when the Emperor saw his wife Bellyfant, he leapt off his horse, and in tears and sighs, not being able to speak, he embraced her: and Valentine and Orson bare them company in their lamentations, so did also many of the rest there assembled. At last words took place, and the Emperor recounted all the hard dealings that had proceeded against the Emperess, requiring pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the Fates to bring me unto your sight, I freely forgive all wrongs, but I long to see the man that proved my innocence with his sword. Love (quoth the Emperor) this is he by whom your honor was preserved. Sir (quoth the Lady) you ought to be regarded for your service to the Empire of Greece, and King of France. For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thousand marks in gold. Lady, I thank your bounty, and will attend you during life. Then (said Valentine) Mother I pray tell me some tydings of Clerimond. Fair son, Clerimond hath been stolen from Aquitaine, and given to King Trompart, that came to the Pagans aid. Valentine hearing this, took strange joy upon Pacoler, thinking that he had recovered him: and would have smitten him, but Pacoler entreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stolen my horse away, but I am revenged on him, by cutting off his head. Valentine understanding these misfortunes, and that every one was innocent, he grew into bitter passions for his loss.

C H A P. XLV.

How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainted, and left the knife in the bed, and accused *Orson* falsely of Treason, and how the knife was found in the Kings bed. And how *Orson* claimed combat against his accusers, when they would have adjudged him; and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end he slew the Dragon, and how *Valentine* after the conquest of the Dragon, caused the King of *Antioch*, and all his land to be baptizd, and of the lawless love of the Queen *Rozamond*. And how the King of *Antioch* was put to death for renouncing his *Mahometry*, by *Brandisser* his wives father, and how the Emperor of *Greece*, and the Green Knight were taken Prisoners by *Brandisser*.

These wars thus ended. *Pepin* took his leave of the Emperor and returned into *France*. *Orson* would needs go along with his Uncle *Pepin*, and spend the remainder of his days in his service. The *Emperor* was content, and said unto him, I will make you high Constable of *France*, moreover, if it so chance, that my young Son *Charles* should decease before me, I will make you King of *France*. I thank you gracious Uncle, and you shall find me faithful, and along with me will I bear the Lady *Fezon*. The day of taking leave came, and each embraced other with kisses and tears. But *Valentine* could not rest, for he had lost his love: wherefore I am resolved to see my love, for whom I endangered my life, and by my sword I won her. Her I bewail, and her will I recover again if she be alive: but if I find her not, short and woful will be my days, and so he called *Pacolet* to him, and said: Wilt thou serve me, and be my Companion in this unknown task? Sir (quoth he) willingly, and am ready whensoever you shall set forward. Then *Valentine* made all things in a readines for his departure, and now hath taken *Bra* and left his Crown and Country, only accompanied with three attendants. Now leave we him, and speak of King *Pepin*.

Pepin, who by this time is seated in Paris, and was honourably received: But above all, the valiant Orson was highly esteemed, insomuch that he had even all the command of the Kingdom delivered over unto him. It ought was to be brought before the King, Orson was the man to be laid unto.

This greatness of Orson fretted Haufray and Henry (of whom you have heard before) to the heart, insomuch that they plotted a means how to take away his life, saying it was much to their indignity, if Orson should be so preferred before them, being sons unto the King: surely, saies the one to the other, his glory cannot long endure, for his own pride will be his overthrow. I but, said Haufray, understand me, we have two Nephews, Sons unto our eldest Sister, to wit, *Florence* and *Garnier*, these are both hardy and fierce, and by them me thinks some plot might be set on foot: again, they are fit members to execute any villany, for one is Butler unto the King, the other is Usher unto his private Chamber: now either of these may enter into the Kings Chamber, and murder him in his bed, and such a deed being done, it will surely be laid to *Orson's* charge, for he only hath the guard of his person. If this can be effected, *Orson* surely will be condemned to death, and the Realm wholly light into our hands. In this it is necessary to use secrecy.

Upon this resolution they sent to these two instruments of murder, to acquaint them with the treason, & being come, *Haufray* said unto them: Sirs, I and my Brother have laid a plot to do us good, and raise you to honour, which thing we shall rather to offer unto you, for that you are almost unknown, and therefore we respect you before others. This it is, you know our Father the King never loved us, but hath ever advanced strangers, and left us slightly regarded; these things considered, my Brother, I, and you two, have separated from our Uncle, determine to put our dominions to death, and so we may improve our Land into our own government. This thing by us first plotted, were surely to be executed by one of you, and I think you, *Garnier*, to be the fitter for it, because you being Usher in the Kings Chamber, you may convey your selfe into some Tower, and when the King is in bed, murder him. This being thus, which it will be known that the King

is slain, the fact will be laid upon Orson, for he only hath the charge of his body, and so we shall quickly get him adjudged to death: and as for little Charles we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle (said Garnier) doubt not, but that I shall undertake this enterprize. Shortly after Garnier, on a night when the King was at supper, got a knife and secretly entered into the Kings Chamber, and hid himself behind the Hangings. When the hour of 8 Kings going to bed came, he was attended by his Guard, and Chamberlain, as the manner was: the King being laid, every man departed, save only Orson, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep, Orson seeing the King asleep, without making noise, left him, and laid himself down upon a Pallat by him.

The dead time of the night was come, wherein Garnier assayed (having the knife ready) this bloody enterprize: but being come to the beds side, ready to lift up his arm to strike the fatal stroke, he thought the King would awaken, and so in trembling fear laid him down by the beds side and durst not stir: Anon he would adventure again, but being (as before) possessed with fear, he put the knife within the bed, then he returned to the place from whence he came. Orson all the while slept soundly, misdoubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightful dream, which was, that one would have robbed his wife of honour: also he thought, that beside a River, he saw two Herrons, who fought with a Hawk, but the Hawk defended her self so valiantly, as he had slain the two Herrons, had they not been assisted by a multitude of little birds, and the Herrons likewise had slain the Hawk, but that an Eagle rescued him.

At this Dream Orson awaked, and was much astonished therat, saying: The Gods preserve my brother Valentine from Treasons. By this time the day broke, and Orson softly stole out of the chamber, fearing to awaken the King. When Garnier saw Orson gone, he also followed soon after, and took his way towards the chamber, where he found the two brethren, who longing to hear of news, Garnier, (quoth they) tell us what is done? Lords, (said Garnier) I would not do the like again for all the gold in France, and yet I have not hurt the King, for still as I was lifting up my hand to strike, fear and horror did so affright me, that I durst no more
P adventure,

adventure. But I have advised me of another plot, and have of purpose left the Knife in the Kings bed, and this it is, we will accuse *Orson* of Treason, and tell the King there are four Traitors, whereof *Orson* is the principal. Also, they will make away little *Charles*, and so wholly possess the Crown. To prove this, we will say, that for this purpose *Orson* hath conveyed a Knife into the Kings bed, if any demand how we know thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the door, heard all their conference. *Garnier* (said *Haufray*) you say well, but if *Orson* deny it, you and your brother shall crave combat against him, say, that by such adventure you come by the worse, my brother and I shall find men enough to rescue you. Thus they resolved, and thus was treason laid the second time for *Orson* the Innocent. The next day the King being at dinner, attended by *Haufray* and *Henry*, who shewed good countenance to *Orson*; when *Garnier* saw his time, he came before the King, saying, Worthy King, your Grace hath bestowed on me many Kingly favors, wherefore it is my duty to open unto you a treason which lately I chanced to hear, and to the end you may have a care of your person, I will bewray unto you the Practicers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on *Orson* first, for he was the principal Traitor, the number in all are four. *Orson* was the man should kill you in your bed with a Knife, and that your Majesty may the better credit me, this day as they met together, I was in a certain place, and heard *Orson* say, the Knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your bed: now if it please you either to go or send, you shall find my words true. Sir (said *Florent*) my Brother speaketh nothing but truth. The King hearing these words, beheld *Orson* with many strange countenances, and at last said: False and disloyal man, can such a thought enter into thy breast, as to take away my life, whom I have more respected then my own Children? *Liege* (quoth *Orson*) be not lightly carried away to believe this accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall prove envy the author of all these treasons. Speak no more (said the King) for if the Knife be found in the bed I will crave no further proof. So calling to his Lords, he said, Lords, I was never so suddenly confounded as at this present. Sir (said *Millon Daugler*) I know not what to say, but I cannot believe that

that *Orson* is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty, yea (but said the King) if we find a Knife in the bed, it is an evident sign to move me to beleve it; I pray let us go make tryal. So the King went himself into the Chamber, accompanied with many Attendants, and being there, they found the knife, as *Garnier* said: Alas, said the King, in whom may I trust, when my own Kinsman seeketh my life? but I vow he shall suffer a shameful death. With that a valiant Knight named *Symon*, came to Orson (which loved him well) and said: Alas sir, live and save your life, for the King hath found the Knife in his bed, and so the King hath vowed your death. Orson said, I fear nothing. The King entred the Hall where Orson was, guarded with fifty one knights, and so assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgement.

Orson being brought before the King and his Lords, he said unto them: Worthy Lords, since my words cannot defend me, I require but the custome of your Country, which is, that when a man shall be accused of Murther or treason, he might crave the Combat against his enemy.

Now for my part, I hold my self innocent, which I will maintain; if by your councils you grant me that which in right belongeth to me: and further to clear my self, loe here is my Gage: if I be overcome, do with my body as it pleaseth you. *Garnier*, said, *Orson* I think you were better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reason to answer you in the field. Ah Traitor! there is nothing yet proved, but that a man that feareth not damnation; and desireth honour, saith so. Upon these Words the twelve Peers of France, caused Orson to be removed out of the place, and also the brothers his adversaries, while in the mean space the rest disputed the Question. At last it was adjudged that Orsons demand was reasonable, & that he ought to be heard. Then were the brothers called in again before the King; then Duke Myllon demanded of *Garnier*, who were confederate with him in the Kings death. Lords (quoth he) I will not bewray them for all the wealth in France; *Garnier* (said the Judge) I give sentence: that you and your Brother take up Orsons gage, and fight with him; for since you conceal the rest of these murderers, it is to be doubted, that there is malice in the plot, Orson at this sentence

rejoyced, and cast his Glove down into the two Traitors, saying: Lords, here is my Glove that I cast down to these two Traitors, upon this condition, that if my case be foul, or by them conquered, I offer my body to your will and pleasure: Rise then, said the King, for judgement is past: and for your further security, it were good we had some hostage: With that Haufray and Henry offered themselves body for body, for Garnier and his Brother: and for Orson, two Myllon Daugler, and Duke Sampson. So a monthes day was assigned for the Combate.

The time being come that they should fight, Duke Myllon Daugler, Sampson, Galeram, and Garvales, brought forth Orson, for he was well beloved: when he was armed and well mounted, he rode through the City, nobly accompanied, towards the place appointed. Long had he not been there, but Haufray and Henry entered the field, with their two Nephews, royally armed. Garnier and Florent the two Traitors greatly feared Orson, but Haufray and Henry still comforted them, promising them aid: being thus in a readinesse, the Bishop of Paris went unto them, and gave unto them all three an Oath, according to the Law of Arms; & then the Bishop departed away. After came the Heralds & the Sergeants of the field, to clear the place. Now Haufray had provided 3000 men hard by, and given them command, that as soon as they heard him blow his horn, they should set forwards towards him. This gladdened the Traitors at the heart, but it little availed them: for as soon as the Trumpets gave signal, Orson couched his Spear, and putting his spurs to his horse, ran upon them with such fury; and sent Garnier such a stroke, that he ran through both shield and harness, Florent on the other side, gave Orson a blow, that he thought he had struck against a Tower. False and accursed Traitor (quoth Orson) that hast wrongfully accused me, ere this day pass, I shall shew thee where loyalty doth rest: and with these words, he with his sword smote Garnier out of his saddle, and withal pulled off his helm, and had cut off his head, if his brother Florent had not rescued him.

Again Orson made towards Garnier, and striking off his ear, said, Fair Master, I would be loath you should lose by the bargain. Here began a fresh Combate between these three Champions,
Gar-

Garnier having recovered again his Helm, came upon Orson with all his force, thinking to have left some mark of that encounter, but had not his Brother relieved him; he had soon been slain. Thus Orson had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout courage, and beside, they relied much upon rescue from Haufray and Henry, but still Orson followed, and at last so wounded Garnier, that he was faine to forsake his horse. Being on the ground, he smote at Orsons horse, insomuch that he cut off one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but Orson being light and strong, leapt from off his back, and being on the ground, he came and took Garnier between his arms so strongly, that he took away his shield, and threw him on the earth; but as he would have wounded him in the belly, Florent came upon Orson, and gave such a stroke on his Helm, that he made him stagger; Orson verred herent, smote him so, that he overthrew his horse dead to the earth, and after took off his Helm. Florent was so ashamed hereat, that he ran up and down the field, covering his head with his shield, and Orson took pleasure in chasing of him, so Florent (said his brother) flye not, returne, or we shall be vanquished, & herewithal they made a fresh encounter upon Orson, & with their Swords laid on so lustily, that the strokes entered his Armes, & drew blood, Orson feeling himself wounded, smote off one of Florents arms: but yet he gave not over. Orson espying him making a blow at him, made as if he would have struck at Garnier, but suddenly withdrawing his arm, hit Florent in such wise, that he fell down dead to the earth, and after said unto Garnier: Traitor, thou shalt after, except thou confess the Treason. Not so Orson, for I will be revenged on thee for my Brothers death. Haufray and Henry distinguished the match, and said, one of our Nephews is slain, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confess the Treason; and thereby bring us in danger. Brother (said Haufray) I will tell you what may be done: as soon as we perceive Garnier to be overcome, before he confess any thing, we will enter the field, and make as if we came to cheer up Orson, and we will cut off our Nephews head, and so the treason shall not be known. Quoth Henry, be it so. Now the both the Champions in it in the field. Garnier said Orson, you are your own death, not escape my hands, therefore confess the Treason, and I will save

save your life: Boy (quoth Garnier) thy fair promises, are little
 worth, for seeing that I have lost an ear, I little respect any place
 of honor, so rather chusing to dye valiantly, or conquer thee, I set
 down my rest that here I will finish my fortunes, either to conquer
 or to be conquered: Agreed (quoth Orson) and sith death is so wel-
 come to thee, defend thy self, for this shall be the longest day of
 thy life: and thus he makes at Garnier, and by strength of arms
 threw him under him, & pulled off his helm. Haufray seeing there
 was no way but one, ryed out, Orson slay him not; for we know
 he hath wrongfully accused you: so we will do such justice upon
 him, as to so foul a fact, appertaineth: & Haufray said unto Gar-
 nier: Nephew confess your fact, and we will be a means unto the
 King for your pardon. Lords, said Garnier, I did put the Knife in-
 to the Kings bed: In speaking these words, Haufray drew out his
 sword, running him quite through, and after said: Lords, let this
 Traitor be hanged on the gallows, as he hath well deserved, but
 Cousen Orson, I am glad of your victory, for it proveth you inno-
 cent: and though Garnier were my Nephew, yet will I never ac-
 knowledge him, of my blood. Now was come the Lady Fezon, who
 was glad of Orsons victory: B. Pepin also came, saying, Nephew,
 you have endured dangerous wounds. Uncle (quoth Orson) the
 Traitors are vanquished, and Haufray made Garnier to confess the
 Treason, & so killed him. Nephew, beware of that Haufray, for he
 hath surely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace.
 The King and the Barons returned into the City of Paris, and
 made great joy for the victory. Haufray and Henry spake first of
 him, but in their hearts they imagined mischief, which after came
 to light, & they had their desert: where we leave them, & return to
 Valentine, who rode from place to place to find out Clerimond.
 Valentine having travelled long, at last arrived in the City of
 Antioch, thinking to find the Lady Clerimond. Basolet being
 with him, could speak their language, and took up their lodging
 in a great mans house: but the Host of the House was something
 doubtful: and when they were in the Chamber, he would hearken
 how much they could say he understood they were Christians, where-
 upon he went to the King of Antioch, and said, Sir, there are four
 Christians in my house: that have entered your land without pay-
 ing

ing of tribute. The King said, Thou hast well done, let them be brought before me, so being sent for, he said unto Valentine: Christian, I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must make choice of, or else suffer death. What is it (qd. Valentine) for I will do any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian faith, or else fight with a dreadful Dragon that hath devoured many men: she is bigger then a Horse, winged like a Fowl, feathered like a Griffon, the head of a Serpent, a great Ring within her mouth, a fierce look, the skin covered with red scales, and she hath the feet of a Lion. Qd. Valentine, this is some hideous Monster, yet will I try my fortune against her, if you will but grant me one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your *Mahometry* and become Christians. The King bound it with an Oath, y^e he would, for there were never any yet returned alive y^e attempted it. Sir (qd. Valentine) let me have a bout or two with this Monster. Then he caused a Shield to be made, & thereon fastned a great number of long pickes of steel, a foot long, as sharp as needles.

This Shield being made, Valentine put on Armour, & buckling on his Helm, then girded his Sword to his side, took leave of his men, and mounted his horse, issued out of the City. Being gone, every one got up into their windows to behold y^e fight. Now they of the City were faine to provide for the Dragon, either the carcass of a man, or of a beast, which if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City: but having eaten her prey, she would return unto her Den again, without doing any harm. All such Malefactors as any way had deserved death were continually thrown unto this fearful Monster, but if they had no Malefactors, then they went unto the Sea-side, for to take up Christians, if they hapned to come on shore, and they were brought to be devoured of the Dragon.

Now by this time is Valentine within the sight of the Dragon, she seeing one coming towards her, closed her Wings most fiercely, casting out of her mouth smoke like fire. Then he descended from his Horse, and left his sharp Ar at his Mothers Bow, and went toward the Serpent, thinking to have smitten her, but she lifted up her paw to smite at Valentine, who subtilly watching y^e opportunity.



opportunity, lifted up his Shield (armed as you have heard with
Pikes) and so the Serpent broached her foot upon them, who feel-
ing her self hurt, she crept out most horribly, drawing back, and
recovling. Valentine pursued, but when the Serpent saw him ap-
proach, she rose up on her feet, and thought to have beaten down
Valentine with her fore-feet under her, but fearing the shield, she
ran back. The King beholding this, said: See yonder is a most va-
liant Knight, whom we ought to reverence for his hardiness. Also,
the fair Queen Rozamond fell in love with Valentine, to see him
so adventurous.

Now grew the battel fierce and dangerous between Valentine
and the Dragon, but still she fearing the pikes of the shield, by
which he told her play. In the one hand he bare his shield, & the
other his sword, where with he gave the Serpent a marvellous blow
under the ear, but with the blow he broke his sword. Valentine
was in great danger when his sword was broken, for he had great
danger, that with her paw she rent his Armo: quite through.

Valentine still pursued her, and drew forth a knife and struck it to her thigh, but she little regarded it. Valentine seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Ar of his saddle-bow, and returning unto her subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the serpent such a blow with his Ar, that he cut off most part of her tail, whereat she roared most hideously. After this she set at Valentines head, and pulling off his Helmet, smote him to the ground, but he quickly getting up was half amazed at his head uncovered: Pacolet perceiving his Master in distress, got into the City and put himself in arms, got another Helm, and bare it to his Master. Valentine perceiving him, said: Friend, I am well nigh spent, go thy way and commend me to my friends, for if thou stay here, thou must dye with me; but for all this, Pacolet came to Valentine and delivered the Helm, the serpent seeing that, came to Pacolet and taking him by the right leg, pulled him down under her, giving him a crush with her paw, that he felt it thorow his Armoz, and had slain him, had not Valentine with his Ar cut off her nose, and put out one of her eyes: these hurts made the beast mad, and opening her wings she flew to the top of a high rock. Then went Valentine to his Helm, thinking to have put it on again, but suddenly the beast came flying down, and he was faine to cover his head with his shield, which the Dragon espying, returned again to the rock. Then Pacolet put on Valentines Helm, and said: Sir, I am forewounded, and must of necessity return to the City, to get some remedy, for my heart faileth, so they took leave. As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assailed Valentine, and flying directly at his head, thought to have laid hold thereon, but Valentine thrust his Ar so right, that he cut off one of her wings, whereby she could not fly. The Dragon being down, Valentine quickly smote off the other wing, so that the vessel was much violent, between them, inasmuch as he was not able to lift up his arm any longer to wield his Ar, but leaving all, he got up into a tree to rest his wearied limbs, and the beast not able any more to fly, beheld him with a cruel countenance, falling out of her mouth, nothing but flaming sparks.

Valentine, being well refreshed, came down and went towards the Dragon that ran directly at him. Valentine still put the shield before him, and with his Ar cut her left thigh, wherewith she fell

to the earth. Valentine still pursued his strokes, and ran his Ar so far into her throat, that she fell down dead. Valentine having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called unto him, and said; of all Knights, thou art the most hardiest, for by thy valor, is our City delivered of a fearful enemy, that hath much endamaged us: to which these words they entred the City, and so to the Pallace, where a solemn feast was held: then the King caused Valentines wounds to be carefully healed. The Queen likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamoured on him so hotly, that for to gain his Love, she would have wrought the death of the King her husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his wounds within the City of Antioch, he said unto the King: Sir, you remember your promise, that you and your people would receive baptism if I overcame the Dragon; you see she is slain by me only. True saith the King, and look what I promised I will perform: and thereupon sent his present Edict throughout the Land, that every one should forsake Mahomet, & be baptized. The Queen sent for Valentine to her chamber, who presently went to her, and said: Lady, I am come at your command, and ready to do you service. Ah, said the Lady, thou art of great hardiness, wisdom, strength, and all the beautitudes belonging to a famous Warrior, happy is the Lady that shall enjoy thy love. O that I were not a woman, or a woman not under subjection. O! I could love thee beyond humane reason; hadst thou but so much liberty as to embrace me; or to grant me love. Lady I thank you, but you have wedded a puissant King, and him only ought you to love and honour: Knight, 'tis true, I have been ever constant to him, but since I first beheld thee all my thoughts are captivated: Valentine seeing the Queen so eager, replied: Lady, if the King should but know or suspect me, I should surely be put to death. Again, he is old, you young, rest your self content till I return from my intended journey, to the holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead, I willingly give my self unto you. Hereupon she played the part of many women, that are weary of their husbands for the love of others. Even so began this Queen to practise, for one night, as the Queen was going to bed, a cup of wine was brought unto her (as the custome was) where

in the had conveyed poyson, and after presented it unto the King : but he having some doubt thereof, disliked it, saying : Lady look what drink you have brewed, either drink it your self, or tell me what you have put into it. The Lady being in this perplexity, knew not what to say, but fall on her knees, craved pardon, and said that Valentine procured her to do it : I do believe thee qd. the King, and pardon thee, so they lay together that night : but she still requested that Valentine might be put to death. He shall as sure as I live, qd. the King. She hearing the King say so, was very sorrowful, and secretly calling one of her maidens, sent to Valentine to tell him her will, and what the King had decreed against him : Valentine hearing of this accusation, whereof he was innocent, said : what will not a woman undertake? Now for the love of the Queen must I depart like a Traitor, or else lay her shame open to the World : Well, I will rather depart with dishonour to my self then her : and therewithal calling up his attendants before the morning he departed the City, and came to the Sea-side, where lay a ship full of passengers, ready to put off, in among the rest goes he and his company, so hoisting sails they departed. On the morrow, when the King was up, he caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them : Lords, I am most deceived in the man whom I trusted, and he whom in heart I held dearest hath betrayed me, Valentine I mean, who for to gain the lawless love of my Queen, hath stirred her up to poyson me, therefore let us proceed to judge him to some shameful death.

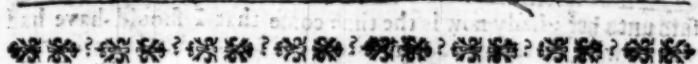
Amongst the rest an aged wise Baron, said : We have no reason to proceed against an offender, without calling him to answer. Again, were he never so great an Offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon Valentine was sent for, but instead of Valentine came his Host, who told them Valentine was gone before the break of the day from his house, but whither he knew not. The King hearing this, suddenly sent forth men to follow and pursue him, but all in vain, for he was past their reach on the Sea.

Shortly after that, the K. of Arooch was converted, his wife's father Brandisser a Turk, had so great a spleen against the King for altering his religion, that he sent to him for his daughter Rozamond. When the K. heard his unjust demand, he gain-said him :

hereupon Brandiffer came upon him with an 100000 Pagans, and besieged his City: At last within the compass of four months, by treason he obtained it, took the King prisoner, and suddenly put him to death and crowned himself King of Antioch. This done, he returned into his Realm, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempest he was forced into the land of Greece, into a little City called Cretophe.

Within this City by chance was the Emperoz of Greece newly arrived then, and he and the Green Knight, with some other company rid forth to sport themselves, not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the hands of Brandiffers soldiers, and having gotten them, hastened towards the gates of the City, thinking to have seized the whole City, but they found it manfully defended.

The men of Cretophe were very sorrowful, for the loss of the Emperoz and the Green Knight. At last they determined to send letters unto Belysant of what happened, and to demand aid against these Pagans. The Lady receiving these Letters, was wondrous sad, and sending for their Captains and men of war, made preparation for a speedy revenge. Also she sent for her Son Orson, and craved aid of her Brother King Pepin. Being thus in a readiness, they were sent to the succour of the Emperoz: But Brandiffer had scouts abroad to give him notice of all that happened, and fearing the forces of the Greeks, and their prisoners lost, they stole to the sea-side, so taking ship they in short time arrived at Lize, in which place they took a Castle, wherein was kept his two Daughters, Rozamond and Galazy, who for her beauty had been demanded of fourteen Kings. Brandiffer had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore he caused her to be kept within this Castle, for it was the strongest in the Land: for it had a Bridge made by such cunning art, that but one could pass at a time, at the end of this bridge two fierce Lyons stood to keep the entry into this Castle: the Lady Galazy was kept in a dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperoz and the Green Knight, with other Christians which had been there a long time, were put. Where leave we them, and we shall shew you some what of the fair Lady Clerimond, which still remained in Inde.



C H A P. XLVI.

How *Clerimond* after the year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of *Inde*. And of *Lucar*, that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the King of *Inde*. And how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy*, wedded *Rozamond* the fair Daughter of *Brandisser*, and how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breath out defiance, and of the answer he brought from the *Indian King*. And how *Rozamond* found a way to be taken, and led unto the *Indian King*, and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandisser* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against King *Pepin*, and how King *Pepin* took the City of *Angory*.

YOU have heard already of the death of King *Trompart* who stole away the Lady *Clerimond* upon *Pacolets* horse: also how she got pardon for one whole year before she would marry. Now is the time expired, and all this while appareth no succour for her relief, which she so long hath expected. Therefore (poor Lady) now is she put to her shifts, and to save her Maiden-head, she feigned her self very sick. This news came to the Kings ear, that the fair *Clerimond* was extreame sick, at which he grew very sad, and came to visit her, at last he would have put his hand upon her head to have held it, but she refusing took his arm and lift up her head herself, making signs that she would bite him, at which action he mounded, and grew much astonished thereat.

After this she rolled her eyes up and down, and made grievous faces, in such wise, that the King got him out of the chamber, fearing lest she would prove mad. In this manner she abode a long time, and she did act the matter so well, that within fifteen days she seemed more like a beast then a woman: she made all her Attendants forsake her, for if she caught them, she would leave some mark behind her, so they left her alone: giving her meat at the window, for none would come near her. One while she put her smock uppermost, anon all beclouded her face with sor, and in this estate the King came & beheld her, lamenting her disemper, and

said unto her : Lady now is the time come that I should have had you to wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well, made shew as if she would hear him, but then she fell into a stronger fit of madness, one while she would run against the chimney, another while fall into a great laughter, then sit down and make faces, and all to preserve her chastity. Many waies was tried for her recovery, yet none prevailed : so leave we her in her chamber, and return to Valentine, who with an ardent desire is robed abroad, accompanied with Pacolet, to find out the Lady Clerimond. Long have they travelled to find out the Lady Clerimond, and now were they arrived in Esclardy, which was the Kingdom of Trompart, who carried away the Lady on Pacolet's horse. Being in the City, they asked for King Trompart, so they told him he was slain by the King of Inde, and that now at this present, Lucar his son would revenge his death upon the King of Inde, and to that end he hath newly mustred up his powers, and waged many royal Kings to undertake this war. Then spake Pacolet who well understood the language, saying, of what account is this King *Lucar* ? for the Host where he lay told him, that he should shortly marry with the daughter of Brandisser that was late Wife to the King of Antioch, who was slain by Brandisser, for that he forsook his Religion.

At this tale Valentine was much abashed, and wondered at this sudden alteration; but at last he said : know ye what is become of the Lady that King *Trompart* did bring with him ? Of her we hear no tydings (quoth the Host) tell me then where is King *Lucar* at this present, I would fain serve under him for wages, for my money is fallen short, and I have a great desire to follow the Wars. Marry, said the Host, King *Lucar* is in *Esclardy*, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge Host, and attendeth *Brandisser* to receive his Daughter in Wedlock. Valentine knowing all this, he hoped to hear of Clerimond, and so he departed, and came to *Esclardy*, to serve King *Lucar*.

Lucar being in the City of *Esclardy*, thither came *Brandisser* with his Daughter. At sight of whom *Lucar* was joyful, but the Lady was sad, for of all other she could never love him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married unto King *Lucar*.
Valen-

Valentine was abroad, and entering a wood, he heard the crying voyce of a woman. whom a Sarazen would have ravished: Valentine still heard the cry, and said unto Pacolet: Ride faster, for this cry is more and more in my ear, and we shall do a charitable deed, in relieving the oppressed. Sir, said Pacolet, meddle not in this matter, for you know not what danger you may be drawn into.

Pacolet thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the name of a Knight, that will not aid in time of necessity: so he rode up and down the wood, till at last he lighted on the Sarazen, that had gotten a Lady under him. Then Valentine said: My friend, forsake your Lady, or else betake you to your arms, and combat with me, for you may well perceive she loveth you not. By Mahomet, quoth the Pagan, I accept of this thy challenge, and will make thee know that in an evil hour camest thou hither. These words past, he left the Lady, and mounted his horse, and then took his shield and spear, and being prepared, they set out one against the other so fiercely, that Valentine ran his spear quite through the body of the Pagan, in so much as he fell down dead. Then went Valentine to the maiden, saying, Damofel, now is your enemy laid in the dust, but I pray shew me the cause why this man brought you into this wood: Sir, I will tell nothing save the truth; so it was, that yesterday late, he came into my Fathers house to lodge, and there attempting the use of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the chamber of my Father, and there slew him. Afterward he thought he should surely have got his will on me, in this manner as you see, from which by your manhood I am freed, and mine honour saved: Do with me what pleaseth you, for your Body hath ransomed mine, and besides, as you have won me, I yield me to your pleasure.

Damofel, by me thou shalt receive no wrong, return unto your house, and keep well your chastity. So Valentine left the Maiden, and took his way towards Escardy. This slain Pagan had certain Attendants which were gone to seek him, and as soon as they found him dead, they told his misfortune to the King, saying, our Master, and your Marshal lies slain in the wood. The King was herat right heavy, & presently sent out a search to see if they could And the Murderer. At last Valentine and his company were ta-
ken.

Ken bound, and beaten, by the Kings commandment. Now in this Castle was Rozamond, who knew Valentine, and was very sorrowful for him, and anon she went unto the King and said Alas Sir, do this Knight no harm, for I vow he is the valiantest Knight breathing, he is called *Valentine of France*, that slew the mighty Dragon before the City of *Antioch*, make much of him, and retain him into your service, for his fellow lives not in the world. Lady (said the King) divers times have I heard much talk of his prowesse, and I have much desired to have a sight of him. Then he called Valentine unto him, and said: Knight, fear not death, but know that above all men I love and hold you dear, you, and all yours I receive into my pay, marry, one thing yet remaineth which you must do for me, which is that you go into *Inde*, and defie the King thereof in my name, telling him that I am ready prepared to avenge the death of my Father whom he hath shamefully put to death, except he come presently before me with a Cord about his Neck, ready to receive such sentence, as by me and my Barons shall be imposed upon him: if he deny it, tell him I will shortly visite him and his Land with war, and not leave one town nor village unransacked, nor spare the life of any. Sir (said Valentine) all this shall I gladly do, although I know it to be a dangerous adventure.

The Queen Rozamond seeing Valentine ready to depart, entered into the Chamber, and by one of her damoysels sent for him: when he came to her, he saluted her with great reverence, and she said to him: Knight you are welcome, for I had a great desire to see you. So had I Lady (quoth Valentine) as great a desire to see you: for since I saw you, I understand your Husband is dead, and that you are newly married again. Lady, you know that for the love of you, within *Antioch* I sustained much danger of life, 'Tis true (said the Lady) and I acknowledge my self guilty, and it grew only out of love to you. But now hath my father bestowed me to King *Lucius*: who is rich above measure, yet can I not fancy him: he is a perfidious Traitor, and since you entered this Pallace, he grows so jealous of you, that he sends you into *Inde*, trusting you shall never return: for never yet any came back again alive: but I will circumvent him, and set you free from danger. Therefore

know this, that not long ago the King of *Inde* requested me for his wife, and the truth is, I loved him better than this traitor, but my Father crossed me in it: now this King of *Inde* in token of love, send me a ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not shewed to any save your self, but seeing I perceive the malice of *Lucar* towards you, I will give you that which shall defend you from danger, and make you return a victorious Knight, and though I am assured you have no need of my love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my heart, which for your love lies enthralled. Therefore when you come before the King of *Inde*, this shall you do.

After reverence made, and salutations from K. *Lucar*, next greet him from me as my Love, and secret Friend, and tell him, that though my Father hath given me unto King *Lucar*, yet his Love cannot once slip out of my breast, but still hath assured, and full hope one day to meet with him again, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures: tell him also, that when King *Lucar* bringeth his Host, I will come with him, and then if there be any valor in him he may carry me away whether he will. Now to the end he shall not find your words to be in vain, bear him this Ring. Lady (qd. Valentine) for your care, love, & good will towards me, I humbly thank you, and have no doubt, but that I shall deliver your message so effectually to the King of *Inde*, that you shall shortly receive answer thereof. So taking his leave, he went to B. *Lucar*, who allowed him ten Mariners to conduct him over an arm of the Sea, that lyeth between *Esclardy* & *Inde*, so that having a prosperous wind, the next morning they arrived at a Port two miles from the Palace of the B. of *Inde*. Then Valentine being arrived, he drew forth his horse out of the Ship, and backed him, and said unto the Mariners, abide here till my return, for it shall not be long ere I be dispatched. One of the Mariners said unto the rest, If thou return the Devil must bring thee, for of fifty messengers not one returned again. Valentine overheard this muttering speech, but made no answer, so he took his way to the City. And when he was near the Palace, he alighted off his horse, and went to the King. Who was in his Hall, richly adorned, accompanied with three Kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled brow, and thought he was a messenger of B. *Lucar*, and therefore said

aloud unto him, art thou not a servant of King *Lucar*? Sir (saith Valentine) I am, and bring you such tydings as will fret your heart; but on the other side, I bring such glad some news, that your very heart will leap to hear it, from the fair *Roxamond*. Messenger, know this, that in the spite of *K. Lucar* thou shouldst have suffered death, but for the love & reverence I owe unto that Lady thou shalt receive no injury, if so it be, that thou canst shew me some token from her. Yes, saith Valentine, that I shall shew you, and deliver my Message with such applause, that I will not swerve from the truth thereof. That I belong to *K. Lucar*, you know, who by me sendeth these words, that for the death of his father, you must come and yield to his mercy, with a rope about your neck, as a man guilty of so foul a deed, to receive sentence of death according to your desert, if you refuse it (as a Messenger) I breathe defiance against you, and tell you that he will shortly come and lay waste your Land, and ransack your Dominions.

Messenger, I understand thee, and set right by these his bold threats: and for answer to this matter, thou shalt have Letters, wherein shall be explained how little we regard his menaces, and also how ready I am to receive his forces that shall come to whip my Land: there leave thou these proud brags, and return to that thou hast to say concerning the fair Lady *Roxamond*, for I most of all desire to hear from her: Sir (saith Valentine) on her behalf I salute you as her love, and she sendeth you word, that she is against her will, married to King *Lucar*, whom she never loved. Again, the poor Lady is so burthened with love towards you, that if she might have her will, you should soon perceive, that none should enjoy her but you, if you be so content.

Now to come yet somewhat nearer, she told me, that she will come hither in the company of the King her husband, when he taketh up arms to invade you, and then may you find other means to accomplish your desire even as you would. By *Mahomet* says the Indian saying, this pleaseth me exceedingly, Sir (saith Valentine) whether these come from a true heart or no, I cannot say, but for token that all is true that I have said, receive here the Ring which you gave unto her, and though women prove variable, yet methinks she speaks unto you from her inward breast. Friend (quoth he) this

is the same ring indeed, and my heart is overcome with joy, go thy ways in, and take thy repast, while in the mean time I get the letters ready thou shalt take with thee to answer this defiance.

Valentine went in as the King commanded, and was highly feasted, and he still demanded after Clerimond, but could not hear of her. By this time came the King and delivered unto him the Letters, and Valentine taking his leave of him, knew not that his love was in this Court, who abode many evil days for the love of him, and still desired to hear some news of him. In the end he shall find her, but he must suffer many tribulations and hard achievements, as you shall afterwards hear more at large.

Valentine made great hast to be freed out of Inde, and taking horse, he came to haven, where the Mariners stayed, at his coming the Mariners were amazed, and thought that he had not done his message, Masters (quoth Valentine) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my message, and I am safely returned. Then the Mariners said, we much marvel thereat.

At these words he took ship, and on the morrow they were in Escclady. Valentine made no stay, but as soon as he was descended his horse he went to the place of the King, finding him there accompanied with R. Brandisser, & fourteen other Kings that were come to the succour of R. Lucar, against the Indian R. of the return of Valentine they wondered, for the King sent him of purpose never to return, wherefore he made Valentine to come before them all, to tell what tidings of his message. Valentine began thus to say, he regards not all your threats a straw. He is fierce and proud, and says if you have a mind to come to him, he hath a greater desire to receive you, than you have to come, and that you may know I deliver nothing save the truth, here is a letter sealed with his own hand, in which you shall understand his mind more at large. This Letter being broken open, they found Valentines words to be true. King Brandisser understanding his answer, swore by all the Gods that he would never return home again, but with victory, or loss of life.

The next morrow they betook them to the seas, with an host of 200000 Sarazens. So the King carried Rozemond along with him, and they were quickly there. When they pitched their

cents in a pleasant field before the City, whilst they of the City made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their order, so by the river side he might espy their rich pavillions, gallantly furnished with arms and streamers: then the King called unto him certain Heralds of Arms, to know by those Arms, whose tents they were. The first (quoth he) is *Brandiffers*, the second is *Lucar*, and the third is *Rozamonds* with her Ladies. When the King understood that *Rozamond* was there, his heart leapt for joy, and said: It is no time to sleep now, he that will have the love of a fair Lady, must venture life and goods, or else he is not worthy of her, that will take no pains. Hereupon resolving, he presently put his men in battel array, and suddenly issued out of the City upon his enemies so, that they were not in a readiness for they little thought the Indian had been so fierce, but love made him do it.

When the King saw *Brandiffer* ordering his men in battel array, he left his companies, with much diligence he rode toward the Pavilion of the Ladies: Now when *Rozamond* beheld it was he, she gave all the rest of her company the slip, and ran violently into his arms, who joyfully received her. The Indian perceiving her good will, got her up behind him, and putting spurs to his horse, she said, My love is fixed only on you, and for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated man so much as I did King *Lucar*, but now I pray thee let me bid him farewell, and I will keep my self only to thee as long as I live: Lady (quoth the Indian) doubt not, for I will not fail you, and here I vow, ere three days pass, you shall be Queen of *India*, and Mistress of all my Lands. These words passed as he was riding away with the Lady *Rozamond*. At last the guard of the Maidens came out of the Pavilion, and ran to the King, saying: My Lord, there is evil tydings, for this day you have lost your fair Lady *Rozamond*, for the King of *Inde* your utter enemy hath stolen her hence, and is ridden away with her, wherefore quickly send your men of War, and follow him, that they may save the honour of your Queen. Hold your peace (said *Lucar*) and talk no more, for he that hath an evil wife, it is well if he can be so rid of her, although he had a heavy heart. After this he went to *Brandiffer*, and said: Sir, I have small joy of your daughter, who

hath

hath left me to run away with a stranger, and one which is mine enemy, leaving me in reproach and shame. Fair Son (said Brandy) be not discontent at me, for to day I will be revenged on him that carried her. So putting spurs to his horse to ride after him, gathered a great company of men. Amongst the rest, Valentine was one, willing to shew his fidelity, said unto Pacolet, now shew me by thy Art somewhat. Then Pacolet raised such a Charm, which so astonished the *Indian* eye sight, that it seemed to him there was nothing before his horse, but woods, bushes, and great rivers. At this he was so amazed, that he made the Lady alight, when the Queen was on the ground, he thought he should have had means to save her self with the King, but Valentine was so near her, that he said unto her: Lady abide; for you must go with me, for that you have a long time promised me your love. Ah Valentine howe you but little love, for once I made love unto you, and you refused me, wherefore I was forced to seek another: But seeing I am crossed thus, I yeeld my self as your Vassal, so you will make my peace with *Lucar*.

Lady (said Valentine) I will do my endeavour, so he led her to King *Lucar*, and said unto him: Sir, here is the Lady *Rozamond* your Wife, whom the *Indian* Traitor had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowful: Sir, (qu. the Lady) he telleth you true, for even as the battel was begun, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons, that had come to succour me, & without any further enquiry mounted on his horse, being on horse back, I perceived that then I was betrayed, so I struggled and pulled him by the hair, and scratched him by the face, and forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good Kt. escaped. Lady (said *Lucar*) you have well done, and at this present we have no leisure to enquire further hereof, so he left the Lady, & returned to the battel. They of *Inde* returned into the City, who had lost divers valiant Leaders, but none so fretted the Indian at the heart as did the loss of *Rozamond*. Alas Lady (said he) I have failed thee in thy greatest extremity, but I was surely enchanted, and on the sudden, me thought I saw Woods, Fields and Rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the ground, but all was plain and even way before me, Valentine had great praise for getting again
the

the Lady, and she shew'd him a false countenance, in that he had succoured her, but it was all feigned, for she hated him to death, and putting up this mischance, she watched her time, and in the end accomplished her desire, and brought her will to execution.

It is a common saying, women selbome want deceit, as here it appeareth in Rozamond: for some four days after, she rode forth of her tent, pretending to take the air, but took her way toward the King of Inde; & had given him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his prisoner, and so carry her away. The King did according to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her horse by the head, & carried her into the City.

Heroupan began a cry throughout the Host of R. Lucar, that Rozamond was surprized, and she was past recovery. This made Lucar at the heart and gave out, that whosoever could recover her out of his hands, should be made a great Seneſchal: Sir (said Paçolet) if you please to achieve dignity, I will so work, that we will fetch her back? No, said Valentine, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her Husband, but all was in vain. The same day that the King had her he lay with her, and begat a son called Rabelre, who afterward had the possession of Hierusalem. Lucar was right sorrowful for the loss of his wife, but Brandisser his father, comforted him, saying, Son take courage, and let us now be revenged before we depart: but it fell out otherwise, for that day came a messenger to him, who brought him contrary tidings, which was, that R. Pepla of France and the Emperour of Greece was entered his Land, burning and spoiling many places, and were now upon the Siege of Angory, in which City his Lady now lay in Child-bed: therefore you must violently take course to restrain the fury of the enemy, or else endure such torments as were lamentable to behold.

Brandisser herent amazed, went unto his son Lucar, and said, Son, here is evil tidings befallen, the French are entered my Land, wasting and destroying all things, therefore I must leave you, to look after mine own: but let me tell you what you shall do: send some Knight unto the Indian, to demand your wife upon this condition, that you will first forget the death of your Father, and that you will

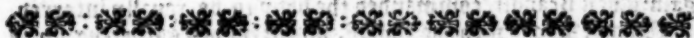
will raise your siege and be gone. Wherefore he sent Valentine unto the K. of Inde to declare this message, he being come before him, said: Great King, I am come from K. Lucar, who saies, that if you will restore his wife back again, he will forget his Fathers death, and will raise up his siege and be gone. To whom the Indian thus replyed, If he will have a wife, he must go seek another, for he shall never again enjoy her. Valentine having thus receiv'd his answer, he departed, and came to King Lucar, telling him all that the Indian had said, which grieved him to the very heart.

Lucar having by this means caused Brandisser to stay with him: sent Valentine and Murgalant to raise the siege which King Pepin had laid against Angory. And as they were under sail, Valentine spying a glittering Tower, asked what it might be. Then the Harriners described the manner & fashion of it to him. Now they were come within the siege of K. Pepins tents, and Murgalant having viewed the Christians forces found the number to be great: then said Valentine, let us secretly send to the City, to acquaint them with our coming, that to morrow morning they may issue out at that side, and we will back them on this side, that none may escape our hands. Pacolet standing by, said: Let me be the Messenger, for I can speak their language. Quoth Murgalant, go thy way: so Pacolet departed, but (he said to himself) by to morrow night you will sing another song. Pacolet, being come to the very gates of the City of Angory, the warders thought him to be some spy, wherefore they demanded of him saying, whither goes this fellow? he looks as if he were some spy: 'Tis true (quoth Pacolet) but I come not for your hurt, therefore bring me into the hoast of King Pepin, that I may speak with my Lord Orson, for I have a matter of great import to acquaint him withal. So they brought him into the presence of Orson, who spying him, was right joyous, and said: How fares my Brother Valentine? Then Pacolet told him of all his adventures that he had passed since they met one another, and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent, and how he could bear up trybings of Cleimond, and told him that they were now come to bear Arms against them, accompanied with 100000 Pagans under the conduct of Valentine and Murgalant, and to chase you out of these countries.

by the command of K. *Lucar*, and K. *Brandisser*, but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the Pagans short home. *Quoth Orson*, do as thou hast said, and win immortal praise to thy posterity: Sir, said *Pacolet*, I am bound in all duty to your Brother *Valentine*, but the service that I shall now undertake will highly please you: First, stand you still upon your guard, and in the night put all your men in readiness, and for that *Valentine* shall not be suspected to be in the plot, he shall continue in his Tent, whilst I cast a strong sleep on all the Sarazens, and then may you come upon them and slay every man. It is good, said *Orson*, so *Orson* led him to *Bing Pepin* to make him acquainted with the enterprize, and *Pacolet* was royally entertained for that time. Now *Pacolet* to find there should grow no mistrust, gave certain signs to *Murgalant*. Being in the City he found out the Admiral *Burnas*, and saluted him with great reverence, and delivered unto him the message which he had brought from *Murgalant*, which was, that of *Brandissers* part were now arrived 100000, and *Murgalant* sends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you have your men in a readiness, to assail the Christians on the one side of the City, and *Murgalant* will assail them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a man of them escape. The Admiral was glad to hear these tidings, but he knew not how this should come to pass. *Pacolet* took his leave of him, and returned back again unto *Murgalant* with salutations from the Admiral: so *Murgalant* gave him great thanks for his message, and *Pacolet* departed secretly to speak with *Valentine*. When he was come he said thus unto him, your Brother *Orson*, and your Unkle King *Pepin* greet you well by me, to whom I have related the whole manner of your coming, because I would have them well and ready prepared: But *Pacolet* would not let him know the plot he had in hand, for he durst not reveal any Treason unto *Valentine*. The night is come, wherein this bloody stratagem is to be acted, so *Valentine* commanded the watch to be strongly set, and would be in the watch himself, but *Pacolet* found a way to prevent him, and caused him to abide in the tent: In the dead time of the night, *Pacolet* went amongst the Pagans, and cast such a charm, that they fell asleep: This opportunity was not let slip by *Bing Pepin*, for he with his ar-

my entered the Hoast with 60000 fighting men, and set fire amongst the Tents and Pabillions, and killed all that resisted: At last they came to the Tent of Murgalant, who lay asleep in his bed, and he being suddenly affrighted skipped out, and one received his body on a Dart, and so he fell down dead.

The assault being given on the Sarazens, Pacolet said unto Valentine, seek to save your self, for the Christians have killed the March, and entered the Hoast. Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast made me break my promise with Brandisser, for which I shall surely dye. Fear not, sd. Pacolet, for he shall do no harm. The morrow after, Bruhans issued out of Angory, & set upon Pepins Hoast, who knew not what had hapned. The battel grew both fierce and long: At last, the Admiral couched his Spear, & running against a knight of Bay, struck him stark dead, & after that, with his Sword he slew Gyrard of Paris: then came he against Robert of Normandy, & lopt off his Leg. At last K. Pepin met with him, & couching his Spear, he ran him quite through: The Pagans seeing their Admiral dead, retired into the City, the Christians followed them, but they defended themselves so valiantly with shot, that the Christians were faine to forsake the walls: but by some other stratagems they won the City, putting all the Sarazens to the sword. At which this City was great riches, which was divided among the soldiers.



CH A P. XLVII.

How Valentine returned back to India after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of K. Murgalant, and how he heard tydings of his Father, and how Pacolet freed the Indian King, & lefe Brandisser in Prison. And how K. Lucar caused all that hundred that watched the Indian, to be drawn to death at horses tails, & how Valentine and Pacolet departed secretly out of his Hoast, & went to Angory, and of the vilion of K. Pepin, and how he went into the holy Land with the twelve Peers of France. And what happened. And how Haksray and Henry betrayed their Father K. Pepin, and the twelve Peers of France. And how Caliph of Bendas made truce between the Indian, Lucar and Brandisser.

And how *Hansray*, to further his Treason, came before *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, and how he was intrapped in his own net.

The City being taken by the Christians, Valentine finding the body of *Murgalant* in the field, caused it to be put up, and covered with black. After certain days sail, they arrived where *Lucar* and *Brandiffer* were, and in mourning manner brought it before the two Kings, as they sat playing at Chess. As soon as King *Lucar* saw Valentine, he said: Knight, welcome home, how fareth and speedeth our forces, have you put the Christians to the worst, and taken *Pepin* and his Nephew *Orson*? Alas, said Valentine, it is fallen out contrary, for we have lost the field, and all our men are slain. For *K. Farin* that had the whole charge of the watch, let his men sleep, and so the Christians came and made havock of our Army. As soon as I got any tydings hereof, I awaked my men, hoping to save them, but it was too late. In this battel was slain your Uncle *Murgalant*, whose body I have here brought. This spectacle fretted *Brandiffer* at the heart, that in madness he threw away the Chess-board, and said, surely *Valentine* thou wert the cause of this. No, Valentine, I return him the lye that says so, and I will maintain my innocency with my sword. Nay (said King *Lucar*) if he had plotted any treason, he would never have come again: Then *Brandiff* commanded the body to be royally interred.

This news gladdened the Indian, and hereupon gathering up all his forces, he issued forth of the City. The battel being begun, Valentine threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand before him. At last, meeting the Indian King, he smote him off his horse. *Pacolet* seeing him down, he led him unto Valentine, and unto the tent of King *Brandiffer*: when tydings came that the Indian King was taken, he called unto his men, saying: Follow hard, and the day is our own, so they entered the Battel, and drove the Indians to a retreat. When *Brandiffer* saw they withdrew themselves, they followed them to the gates, where fell on both sides a great slaughter. The battel lasted so long that it was night, and *Brandiffer* and *Lucar* betook them to their tents, and bad that the Indian King should be brought before them. When *K. Lucar* saw him, he said unto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand.

The

The Indian made shift to understand him, but said never a word. King Lucar had no sooner ended his rough speech to the Indian King, but there arrived a Messenger: who said unto Brandisser: I bring you sad tydings, O King! for *Pepin* King of *France* hath taken your City of *Angory*, and put unto the sword, Man, Woman, and Child. These are ill tydings indeed (quoth Brandisser) but seeing we have the King of *Inde* in subjection, I hope shortly to free mine own Country. Then he said unto King Lucar, Son, we have the King of *Inde* in hold, let us make short work with him, and to morrow morning let him be hanged up: which being done, we will speed unto *Angory* against the *French*, and take vengeance for these wrongs done unto me. Also, I have there in a strong Castle, the Emperor of *Greece*, and the Green Knight, Prisoners, who at my coming shall suffer death. Valentine, being present, was glad to hear of his father, so by a sign he acquainted Pacolet, that he should shortly stand in need of his Art, who inwardly bowed, he would find some means to release them out of Prison. Also, the Indian King looked wisely on Valentine, and said thus to him self: Considered be that hour that thou escapedst my hands, for had I put thee unto death, these dangers had never befallen me: Then King Lucar called a strong guard of armed Sarazens, and said unto them, keep well this Traitor, and on the morrow he shall be hanged. So they took him, and brought him into one of the Pavilions, and bound him about the middle to a post, & so left him, saying to play again. Now Valentine called Pacolet unto him, saying; I am half in doubt, whether Brandisser have my Father in hold, for if I were assured thereof, I would not have endangered my body as I have done in his service: but now is the time to be revenged. Sir (quoth Pacolet) you have small reason to bear him good will, therefore, if so you please, I will find a way to free the Indian King; and to deliver Brandisser into his hands, so may your Uncle *Pepin* hold *Angory* still. This (quoth Valentine) would be worthy of thanks, wherefore prosecute thy plot, that so I may help mine Uncle, and deliver my Father. Pacolet having an eye to what he would do, after supper came among these hundred, that had the charge of the Indian King. After they had made fire within the pavilion, Pacolet cast them all into a dead sleep. Having so

done, he went to the Indian King, and said: Noble King be glad in me, for I am *Mahomet*, and am come to set thee free. Then go thou to my Pallace, and bear along with thee *Brandisser*, who shall not know, whither he goeth. Alas (said the Indian to *Pacolet*) taking him for *Mahomet*) it should seem I have deserved well at thy hands, when thou tookest so much pains to come down and deliver me from death and my enemies. King (said *Pacolet*) trust in me, believe the counsel of thy Wife. Herewith *Pacolet* led him towards *Brandisser*, causing all the watch to fall into a dead sleep, and so enchanted him, that he arose, made him ready, and went along with the Indian King into his Pallace.

The Indian being thus set free, gave thanks to *Mahomet* for his deliverance, then *Pacolet* brought him a horse, made him mount him, and set *Brandisser* behind him, sent him packing for India, and so took his leave. At last the Indian came to the Gates of his own City, and calling the Porters, was instantly let in: when *Rozamond* beheld him, she said: Sir, you are right welcome home, but tell me, how you come by my Father, that you have brought him with you, is there a peace concluded? No (sd. the King) *Mahomet* delivered him into my hands, and freed me from death. So by this time ended the vigour of the charm, and *Brandisser* awaking, began to say: How came I hither, some Devil hath enchanted me; nay, said the King, *Mahomet* hath brought us hither, that you may be at peace with me. I had rather dye: therefore set me free, that I may go to my Hoast again: Not so, for since you are here, I mean to keep you. Now the Sarazens that guarded the Indian, lay still asleep: At the break of day, *Lucar* came to the Pavillion where the Indian lay, but when the Pagans saw him, they cry for mercy, for they had lost their Prisoner. Varlets, quoth *Lucar*, your lives shall pay for it, so he caused them to be drawn along by Reets at Horses tails, and after hanged, whereat *Pacolet* laughed, but *Valentine* said, Friend, I shall never be at ease till I have found out my father, whom *Brandisser* keepeth in Prison. Here *Valentine* and *Pacolet* leave the Pagans, and after travelled to hear tydings of the Lady *Clarimond*.

You have heard before, how King *Pepin* took Angory, so now will I make plain to you the manner of a treason toward him by *Hautray*.

Haufray and Henry : it happened as the King was in his bed in Angory, he had a Dream to this effect: He thought that he beheld a Wals-Priest, bewing unto him divers Relicks, besides a sumptuous Sepulchre, & three times this apparition troubled him : The morning being now come, he called before him all his barons and declared unto them the manner of his Dream, and said unto them: Lords, I know not what may befall, but I think it some delusion; or else it may be that I should go visit the holy places without the City of *Jerusalem*. Then spake Orson, I will go with you, if so you please, and I also, quoth Millon Daugler: after & twelve Peers offered themselves unto him, to assist him in his Pilgrimage. The King hearing them so forward, gave them thanks, and calling before him Haufray & Henry, he said unto them: *Haufray*, you know you are my natural son, but yet in such time was you gotten, when I had not one foot of Land in *France*, therefore it is my will that you enjoy this Land of *Angory*, therefore keep it valiantly.

Then Haufray, said to Henry, Brother, you understand the King our Father well, do you not? He will prefer us to strange Lands, as if we were not worthy to be his Sons; now as for his young Son *Charles*, he provideth to leave him King of *France*, and we must be content with a Forraign part: therefore be ruled by me, and *Pepin* shall never return into *France* to establish his Heir. We will work a plot to deliver him into the hands of the Pagans, and then shall we be King of *France*, and Emperor of *Rome*, all which I thirst after. Brother, quoth Henry, your words are well put together, but how shall this thing be accomplished? Haufray said, I shall tell thee how : Go unto King *Brandisser*, and tell him that I must have his Daughter *Galazy*, and being with him, tell him that King *Pepin* and the twelve Peers of *France*, do determine to go to the Holy Sepulchre, and they may be easily surprized, for they take along with them but a few in train: Brother, this will do well, wherefore make haste to *India*, there shall you finde *Lucar* and *Brandisser*, when you have found them, acquaint them with the plot, and I will go along with you. Do so, quoth Haufray, for I shall never be at quier, till this business be finished. Thus had they plotted treason against their father, who had now entered the seas, thinking to accomplish their pilgrimage, Henry going along with

Witch them: and Haufray likewise hath taken his way towards India, to leaue we them and return to other matters.

The Caliph of Bendas, bring come into the host of Brandisser and Lucar, treated a truce for a month between them and the King of Inde, so appointing a day to meet thereupon, the Caliph began thus to say: Lords, it is known unto you, that the Christians have won the Realm of *Angory*, wherefore I wonder that you continue here, maintaining a needlesse War, and suffer the enemy to grow upon you, in a place of such import: therefore list a while to what I shall declare: True it is, that the King of *Inde* slew your Father *Trompart*, for that he killed his Uncle: this was one for another. Therefore let the *Indian* deliver *Brandisser*, and as for *Rozamond*, let her be brought, and set between the two Kings, *Lucar* and the *Indian*, and if she will stay with the *Indian*, let her, if she will go with *Lucar*, let him receive her. This his counsel was generally accepted, and *Rozamond* was brought forth, whereupon the Caliph propounded the matter for which she was called. *Rozamond* having heard what was said: she resolved to keep her to the *Indian* King, and *Lucar* departed away very sorrowful.

The same day that the Caliph made this conclusion, Haufray came unto the Host of *Lucar* and *Brandisser*, and making haste to their Pavilions, he saluted them, unto whom *Brandisser* said: What wind hath driven you hither? Sir, said Haufray, that I have to deliver, craveth secrecy and attention. So they drew from their attendants, and then Haufray said: Lords, you all know that I am Son to *Pepin* King of *France*, and I also understand, that you (speaking to *Brandisser*) have a beautiful Daughter: now if it please you to give me your Daughter in Marriage, I will deliver into your hands my Father, and all the Peers of *France*, that have so much dammified you: for know that in the habit of Pilgrims, they have taken their journey to visit the holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, sleekly accompanied. Quoth *Brandisser*, for these tydings I will give thee my daughter *Galaxy*, but it must be upon condition, that you renounce your faith; yes (quod Haufray) that shall I do. When *Brandisser* saw the treachery of Haufray, first that he would betray his father, next, forsake his Religion, he withheld himself to advise with *Lucar* & the Caliph, saying to them: you see the treasons

treasons of this man, that demandeith my daughter, how dare I trust him that seeketh the death of his Father, and ruine of the whole state of *France*? No, I will not make my peace with such an homicide. I had rather see my daughters death, then give her so vile a Traitor. After these words, he called to Haufray, and said: Sir, I am glad of your coming, and this shall be your task, you shall go to my Daughter, and bear her this Letter from me, there pass away your time, till we have further leisure to resolve on your business; Sir, said Haufray, I am ready to accomplish your demand, so he delivered him the Letter, and 100 men to conduct him on his way; after they were at *Brea*, within few days, they came within the sight of the strong Castle where Galazy was: when they were come unto the gate of the Castle, a Porter called unto them, saying: My Lords, you may not enter without some certain token. Porter, said Haufray, tell the Lady that we shall satisfie her, the Porter went unto the Lady, and said: Lady, without the gate stand a company of men, that faine would enter, and as I think, they are come from your father. The Lady had her Gentleman-usher, go know what they would, and of whence they were, who did as she commanded: as soon as he understood he came from her Father *K. Brandisser*, he bound up the *Apons*, and opened the Gate, so Haufray entered, and thought all this had been for his good, but it fell out contrary, for he by treason was intrapped. Being entered the Castle, he was brought before the Lady Galazy, whose beauty even amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one word. After some time of pause, he saluted the Lady, and said unto her: Fair Sovereign, know, that for the great renown that I have heard of your most excellent beauty, I have left my country, and passed the Seas, to acquaint your Father with that which shall make him happy, and for that you shall find me speak nothing but truth, loe, here is a Letter sent by me from your Father.

The Lady taking the Letter, read it, when she had read it, she beheld Haufray, saying: Vassal, I have read thy Letter, and I find thee a Christian, and that thou hast sold the life of thy Father, and the twelve Peers of *France*, all this my Father certifieth by his letter unto me, and commandeth me, that I determine what shall be done unto thee. Now for that I understand thee to be a most perfidious

fidious Traitor, I swear by the Law I profess, I will neither take pity nor mercy upon such a wretch as thou art : so she called unto her Officers, & committed him to prison in a dark Dungeon. Haufray seeing what had hapned, said: It is a bitter marriage to me: instead of having my person, you shall be Master of my Prison, and so he was conveyed away forth of her presence. Now in the same Dungeon, lay the Emperour of Greece, and the Green Knight: and when they heard they should have another fellow Prisoner, & Emperour, so soon as he came in, demanded of him whence he was: Haufray said, it is no matter of whence, but I am that unhappy Haufray, Bastard Son of King Pepin: why, quoth the Emperour, I am the Emperor of Greece: can you tell me how it fareth with my Brother King Pepin, and my two Sons, with the residue of the Peers of France? Sir, said Haufray, they are in this Country of Angory, and have won the same in battel. So leave we them in Prison, and return to Valentine and Pacolet.



CHAP. XLVIII.

How Valentine and Pacolet came before the Castle, and how Pacolet raised up the Devil, to ask his Counsel about the taking of the Castle. And how Brandisser brought the twelve Peers of France into his strong Castle, & imprisoned them. And how he besieged the City of Angory. And how Brandisser having knowledge that Lucar was captive in Angory, made means to Valentine to deliver him upon sufficient Ransome.

After many days sail, these two arrived at the Castle, & viewed it strangely, thinking it impregnable: at last, Pacolet said, Sir, anon I will tell you more, so he went aside & cast a figure, incontinently there appeared unto him a devil, who said unto him: Leave off your enterprize, for the Castle is not to be taken, but by treason, & so vanished: suddenly after his departure, there arose a great smook about the Castle, inasmuch as Valentine lost sight of Pacolet, & was driven into an amazement. This mist being dispersed, Pacolet came to Valentine, & said: Let us depart, for there is no way to conquer this Castle but by treason: so they forthwith Castle, & went towards Angory, being there, they demanded tidings



of B. Pepin, but it was answered, he was gone to Jerusalem on Pilgrimage: so Valentine resolved to stay there till his Uncle returned, but all in vain, for by the treason of Haufray King Pepin was surprized by King Brandisser, as you shall hear.

King Pepin being come to Jerusalem, by the direction of certain guides, they were conducted to the holy places. During the time of their abode here in Jerusalem, came Brandisser, the Indian King, & King Lucar (having had intelligence by Haufray, as before you have heard) accompanied with a great host of men, and marched so far that they came unto the King of Sury: being come unto him, he did very much marvel at their coming, and after salutations, demanded the cause: Then spake Brandisser: Sir know this, that by a Christian we are informed, that lately there is come into this holy City, certain Pilgrims, the one of them is *Pepin K. of France*, the rest are the twelve Peers: if it be so, we crave your aid, and assistance, for they are unto us mortal enemies, and have taken from me my City of *Angery*, making great spoils within
 my

my Territories, wherefore we desire you that they may be delivered into our hands, that we may proceed against them according to our Laws: your demand is but reasonable (quoth the K. of Sury) therefore let all be done according to your wish, for I am an enemy unto all such as shall deride us and our religion: Now hearken a little what I shall undertake, I will send unto the Patriark about this matter, and if he have any such *French* Pilgrims, that he presently bring them before him. The King of Sury sent a messenger unto the Patriark to bring them before him, then the Patriark went unto the Pilgrims, and said: Friends, you must come before the King of Sury. Hereat Pepin grew exceeding sad, for he thought he should lose his life, but yet he ruled a little, and I will tell you what we will do: let us here make *Henry* our Lord, and I will wait upon him as a Page, bearing his hat and staff. *Henry* being so skilful in treasons, denied it, saying, here is *Orson*, and Duke *Myllon*, more worthier than I, let them take it upon them; quoth *Myllon*, so you please, I shall do any thing; so they took their way towards the Pagan that sent for them. D. *Myllon* took upon him the person of the King, and the King was his Page, and bare his hat & staff. The Patriark after he had delibered them to the King, departed, and the King of Sury said unto them, It is told me you are all *French-men*, come as Spies, and amongst you is the King of *France*; Sir, said one of the company, the King of *France* is not here: How, not here (quoth Sury) if he do not shew himself openly, I will commit you all to a greivous death. Then spake *Henry* the *Traitor*, and said, It is not I. At these words D. *Myllon* doubted treason, and said, Sir, I am the King of *France*, but withal, suffer me to tell you a thing worthy of note, we are all Christians, and it is free for us to go safely, even by your own Laws, and customes, of your Country, paying a certain tribute. Now this tribute is by us daily paid and observed, therefore you offer us much wrong, to detain us contrary to your Customes.

Say what you will. (quoth Sury) but to Spies there is no such priviledges allowed, and now he called forth *Brandisser* and *Lucar*, and said unto them: Lords, these be Christian Spies, take them and do with them as pleaseth you, these words being uttered, the Pilgrims were laid hold on, and then *Brandisser* said, Lords, let these

these be conveyed to my strongest Castle, and put them into the deepest Dungeon: which being done, let us make hast into *Angory*, and beat out all our enemies. After into *France*, to bring that to our subjection, all this may easily be effected, sith we have all the Peers thereof in captivity, so that there is not a man of worth to make resistance. This done, the Indian King required that amongst all those prisoners, he might have the little one to make his dwarf of, (which was King Pepin) his request was likewise granted: so he took along with him King Pepin, and loved him exceedingly.

The Indian King taking his leave, every one of the Peers, looked pitifully on King Pepin, but durst not speak unto him. Pepin being on his way with the Indian, began thus to lament: How unfortunate am I among men? Alas Duke *Myllon*, it grieveth me most for thee, for thy love towards me, hath brought thy self in danger. But for my son *Henry*, I lay all my curse on thee, that resisteth to relieve thy Father in case of extremity. Farewel *Berthe* my wife, & my young son *Charles*, thy case is most dangerous for what will not traitors attempt against thee? By this time is the Indian come home into his own Land. When the Lady *Rozamond* saw his approach, she was right glad, and received him with much kindness, at last she cast her eyes on King Pepin, who was of small stature, and demanded of the King where he had that little man. Lady, said the King, he was given me at *Jerusalem*, being come thither with the King of *France*, and the twelve Peers.

But now let us return to speak somewhat of *Clerimond*, who was in the Court of this Indian King. The Kings manner was to send her every meal of the best meat from his own Table: And one night at supper time, called Pepin unto him, for to carry her provision, saying unto him: Go into the great Chamber on the other side of the Court, there shalt thou find a foolish Woman, bear this from me. Pepin did as he was commanded, but when he saw her in those base rags, he said unto her: I pity your distressed estate: when the Lady heard him say so, she said: Friend, pity thy self, let me alone, I am not what I do seem to be: but tell me, art thou a Christian? Lady (said Pepin) I am, and come from the Realm of *France*. Then the Lady with a smiling countenance, said: Know you then King *Pepin* and his Nephew *Valentine*? I

quoeth Pepin, and his brother *Orson*, and his Father the Emperor of *Greece*? The Lady hearing him say so, began to shed tears, and yet speak, saying: Friend, may I put trust in you? I, said King Pepin, even as well as if I were your natural Father; then thus, know for certainty, that all that I have done is but counterfeit, for I am a Christian, and the woful love of *Valentine*, that was given unto him as his wife, but I was betrayed and stolen away by the traitor *K. Trompart*, so then she unfolded the mannner of all these things: when *K. Pepin* heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weep, and said unto himself these words: Ha, what trust is in this world? Alas for this poor Lady, Alas for *Valentine*, and yet to see, it is my chance at last to find her out in this unlookt for adventure: After he had ended all these lamentations, he said: Lady, now I do understand whom you are, and sith you trusted me with the secrets of your heart, give me leave a little also to shew you whom I am: Here you see me, and in what shape I go cloathed, yet know that I am *Pepin* King of *France*, and disastrous chance I am fallen into this servitude. As for *Valentine*, know that he undertaketh dangerous adventures, and continueth still without taking any rest: Now, I have knowledge of you, if between us we can make those tydings known unto him, with great joy you may embrace each other. At these words the Lady swooned, but Pepin seeing her recovered, left her, and came unto the King bring at supper. So here we rest to talk any more of this matter; and return to say somewhat of *Brandisser* and *Lucar*, who are busied in leading the twelve *Piers* of *France* to Prison.

Brandisser having the twelve *Piers* in prison, and with them *Haufray* and *Henry*, the onely workers of the Treason, came unto his Castle, where he told all the whole enterprize to his daughter, how the twelve *Piers* fell into his hand. Having finished his tale, he conveyed them into a Dungeon, whereas the Emperour, the *Green Knight*, and *Haufray* lay.

Henry was much troubled, that he durst not discover his mind to *Brandisser*: for he was the first that was let into the Dungeon, after him *Myllon Daugler*, who by chance fell upon *Haufray*, which made him angry: Be not angry (quoth *Myllon*) for there are many more to come down after me, to whom you must give place.

Hau-

Haufray knew after, that it was D. Myllon, and demanded of him, by what means he came thither? Nay (quoth Myllon) I rather wonder how you came hither, for I am sure we left you within the City of Angory. Quoth the traitor, I was taken for a spy, and for that cause am I hither brought. Now are all these Lords sorrowing in Prison, but when Haufray understood that King Pepin was not among them, he seemed outwardly exceeding glad, though in heart he could wish his death. Every one looked for nothing but death, save onely Orson, and he bear it out comfortably, saying: Lords, let us yet trust to my Brother Valentine and Pacolet, who by enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Castle was impregnable. Brandiffer having thus made all sure, called before him his daughter Galazy, and said unto her: I must depart to satisfy mine army, being there I shall meet with the Indian King and Lucar, both which will aid me against the French, that holdeth the City of Angory: therefore keep well my Prisoners, so he departed. And when he came unto his Army, he found Lucar ready, but as for the Indian King, he sent his forces, and came not himself, by reason that Rozamond was lately dead.

The two Kings gathered up their forces, and took their way towards Angory, whither being come, Valentine had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for R. Pepin. This amazed much the Noble Valentine, when he saw the Trats so nigh him: At last he called Pacolet unto him, saying: I wonder I hear not of my Uncle Pepin: fear not (said Pacolet) for ere long we will hear better news, and therewithal departed from Angory, and never rested until he came unto the Camp of R. Lucar, who espying him, demanded of him what news, and what was become of his Master, who so long time he had served: Pacolet answered: Sir, he is long since dead, and I am come to seek a new Master. Quoth Lucar, wilt thou serve me? Yes (quoth Pacolet.) Thus was he received into his service, but he still rewarded his new Master, for the same night by Enchantment, he cast Lucar into such a sleep, & he carried him into the City of Angory. Valentine was right glad of this, and Lucar being placed before a fire, the enchantment ceased & he awoke. Being awaked, he became sore astonished to see himself thus betrayed, and at last Pacolet said unto him: Master, I am

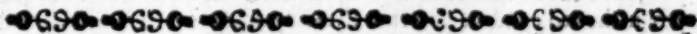
at your service, have you any thing to command me? At the which words Lucar grew much enraged, and taking a knife, gave Pacolet such a wound, that he fell down dead. Valentine seeing this accident, was exceeding sorrowful, and said: Such another friend shall I never have. False Traitor (quoth he) thou hast slain him that was all my hope, if thou hast, thou shalt surely pay for it. Then said Lucar, I am glad that I have slain that Traitor.

Now Valentine went towards the dead Corps, and took out of his bosome a pair of Writing Tables, in which was Written the whole manner of his Art. These Tables had Pacolet ever made Valentine acquainted withal, wishing him that if he out-lived him he should make great account of them, so Valentine put them up, and after made use of them. Here would Valentine have King Lucar put to death, but being better advised, he was safely kept in prison, for if so be that any worthy personage should be taken by the Pagans, then the body of Lucar should serve for ransom of the other. Thus Valentine caused the body of Pacolet to be interred in honorable manner, whose death was much bewailed of all.

The next morning there arose an out-cry throughout the Army, that Lucar was gone no man knew how: amongst the rest, Brandisser made great lamentation, till one told him that he was in Angory, & how he had slain Pacolet, Brandisser was glad Pacolet was slain, but sorry for Lucar: at last calling to him a messenger, he sent to Valentine, to ask him if he would deliver Lucar for R. Pepin, or the Emperor, or Orson, or any other of the twelve Peers of France: the messenger departed on his way with these conditions, and coming to the City of Angory, desired to speak with Valentine: After salutations on both parts, he declared his message, from King Brandisser. Valentine hearing the effect of his message, was much amazed, and said to the Messenger, How cometh it to pass, that Brandisser can make choise of all these valiant men, how became they his prisoners? Quoth the Messenger, I think it is not unknown, how that King Pepin accompanied with the twelve Peers of France, not long since went to Jerusalem, and having amongst them one Traitor, was delivered into the hands of Brandisser, and by him taken in Jerusalem, and committed to prison, wherefore having thus related unto you the truth, said: will you change

change one prisoner for another? Messenger, I shall give answer to thee anon, so entering into the Hall, he assembled unto him all his counsel, saying to them: Thus it is, that for our prisoner *Lancar*, we may have delivered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle King *Pepin*: now in this cause let us resolve what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are most bound to your natural Father, and therefore we judge it most meet to release him.

Lords (quoth Valentine) you have well advised, but yet I am determined to do otherwise, for you all know that my Mother was wrongfully banished, and in her exile brought me forth, and my brother in the Forrest of *Orleans*, where we might both have been devoured of beasts, if mine Uncle King *Pepin* had not taken me up. Thus he nourished and brought me up unto mans estate: after he made me Knight, and hath bestowed upon me many preferments: therefore I say, these things considered, my will is, that, my Uncle be set free for King *Lucar*, he being thus at liberty, we will quickly work the freedom of my Father, and all the rest. When the Barons had heard the wisdom of Valentine, they agreed all with one voice, & he had nobly spoken. Then called they unto their Messenger of Brandisser, and said, Friend, return this answer to thy Master, tell him, that I shall willingly yield the body of King *Lucar*, upon condition, that he deliver unto us the body of King *Pepin*: so after due reverence done, & Messenger departed. Being returned home, he delibered his Message as Valentine had delibered it to him, whereupon Brandisser swore by & Gods, he should have his request.



CHAPTER XLIX.

How *Myllon Daugler* (who was taken for the King of France) was delivered out of prison, instead of King *Lucar*. And how *Valentine* and the Duke *Myllon* issued out of the City of *Angory*; and wan the battel from the *Saracens*. And how King *Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *Indie* Marshal; And left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to succour his Wife.

Brandtfer understanding Valentines want, he hastily dispatches other messengers to his Danzger Galaxy, which kept

kept a strong Castle, willing her to deliver unto these Messengers the King of France and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hearing her fathers mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Jaylor of the Prison, & commanded him to call forth the K. of France. The Jaylor went unto the Prison, calling for the K. of France, for I am commanded to set him at liberty. D. Myllon hearing him say so, could not so satisfie himself, but in doubting manner said: I am here, wherefore do you call me forth? If it be so, that I am the first must suffer death, I am ready to lay it down to maintain my Religion. Sir (quoth the Jaylor) it is no such matter, for you are to be delivered body for body, to ransom another Pagan King, which resteth in captivity among the Christians: When Henry heard these words, he repented him that he had denyed to take upon him the person of the King. Thus D. Myllon took his leave with tears: the Emperoz of Greece said unto him: Above all, I pray remember me to my son *Valentine*, and me too (quoth Orson) and tell him in what misery we lye, requesting him, either quickly to work our delivery or we are not able to endure our lives. Myllon comforted them all he might, & said unto them: Lords, I will never return into *France*, till I see you at liberty, and so he took his way. Being out of prison, he went to the Lady *Galazy*, and did unto her reverence, which she kindly accepted, and commended him to his fortunes: So the Duke goeth along with the messengers that were sent for the King of France. When they were come before *Brandiffer*, he said unto him: King, I would have you know wherefore I sent for you, & to that end: I have appointed those Messengers that brought you hither to conduct you into the City of *Angory* to *Valentine*, and in your stead to send me back my Son *Lucar*, as he hath promised. Sir (quoth the Duke) all this shall be effected to your wish, and if he will not deliver King *Lucar*, according to your expectation, I shall willingly come again, & yeild to your mercy. Royally spoke (quoth *Brandiffer*) I ask no more. So the Duke took leave, and departed with 6 Messengers towards *Angory*. After few days they arrived, where they had free access to the Palace where *Valentine* lay: being come in sight of one another, they kindly embraced: After Duke Myllon took *Valentine* aside, and related unto him the whole course of his actions, and how King *Pepin* was led away

away by the Indian King, who knew not who he was, and how he had taken upon him the Kings name; onely to shield him from danger. When Valentine heard this, he thanked him for his deed, and began to recount what a benefit had happened to him, that he was deliver'd, and the rest left in bonds, for by your true loyalty to your Soberaign, you are escaped from danger. Valentine having ended this discourse, he caused R. Lucar to be brought before him, to whom he thus said: King *Lucar*, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my hands, I shall remember you for the death of my friend *Paculet*, whom you have slain: these words being ended, he deliver'd him unto the Messengers; now was Lucar deliver'd, & the D. Myllon restor'd in his room. Valentine having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers, the Dukes company, they gathered all their scattered troops up into battel array, & with the number of 50000 fighting men, they issued out of the City upon the enemy. Brandisser hearing hereof, made up against him, accompanied with 24 kings his attendants, all holding him their chief Lord, but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come near to do them any harm.

Then Valentine resolv'd to give a new on-set upon the Pagans, and courageously heartning his men, he set upon that part where in was Brandisser and King Lucar. In the thickest of this battel, an Admiral (who was Lord of Cassidon) espied a French-man, making haddock with his Sword among the Pagans; he made towards him, & hitting him with his Axe, he clab'd his head in two peeces: having newly done this Deed, he was espied by another French Cavalier, who making towards this Admiral in the presence of Myllon Daugler, he smote him stark Dead: for the which act of valor Myllon knighted him, and said among them all, that he that won valor should receive the like reward. In this manner continued the battel all that day, even till the Sun-set. At last they strove on each part, which should sound retreat first, but neither side would yield, so that the fight continued all night, till the next morning, making great fires to give them light. At break of day, the battel began afresh, in most fierce manner, that blood ran down as water in Channels.

Valentine and D. Myllon behaved themselves right valiantly on every side they beat down both horse and man. But Valentine was too far forward, for he entered so far into the enemies Camp, that he came very near the Standard of Brandisser. Being there, an Indian Admiral espied him, and ran so fiercely at him, that he flew Valentines horse under him, who perceiving himself unhorsed, lightly got upon his feet, & with his sword hewed out a passage, but he could not have escaped, had not Duke Myllon by chance relieved him with a fresh horse. So Valentine retired himself out of the battel, to refresh his tired limbs. When the Indian Marshal saw their side had the worse, he by his policy withdrew his forces, and in the night time stole out of sight, so that at last they betook them to their heels, and ran away.

Valentine perceiving it, told D. Myllon thereof, so they determined that Valentine & his Troops should set upon the Marshal, which they did, and fell upon the Indians in such furious manner, that they upon the first adventure brake their battel array. The Marshal seeing it, thought to have fled, but Valentine meeting him at this advantage, lent him such a blow with his Spear, as both Horse and Man fell to the earth. Being on the ground, the Soldiers would have killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the custody of four valiant knights.

In this bickering there were many Prisoners of account surprized & taken, all which Valentine sent into Angory to be kept in safety. By this time of the day, Brandisser and Lucar knew that they had the worst, but they could not make resistance. At last, they resolved to return again into their own Countries, and reunite their forces afresh. So wrapping up their Ensigns, they took their flight towards the Sea-coast: and the Christians followed after, killing all that withstood them. Of all the Pagans multitudes that went into the field, there escaped but 100 persons. They being gone, the Christians rising their tents, found inestimable treasure, & having so done, they return'd to Angory, to rest their tired limbs.

After the Christians had won the battel, and given burial to the Dead, Valentine commanded the Prisoners to be brought before him. Amongst the rest was the Marshal of India, of whom he be-

man.

purchase thy freedome, or lose mine own life. This speech, and other affairs being ended, the Marshal was delibered. Then Valentine betook him to his Chamber, to try the Tables that he took out of Pacolets bosome when he was slain, & found every thing set down, to fall out just as it was now come to pass, & taking unto him pen, ink, & paper, he wrote down what there he found, & sowing it unto his Doublet (for fear of losing) it stood him in great stead after, for the safeguard of his life, as hereafter will appear.

King Pepin being resident in Angory, news was brought him from his Wife Bertha, that all France was doubtful of his life, and of the twelve Peers of France, because they heard they were taken Prisoners by the Pagans at Jerusalem. This report running, for current throughout France, hath caused Arthur K. of Brittain, with a puissant Host to enter the kingdom, & so to win the Crown of France by violence. Also he said Arthur hath committed to Exile your young Son Charles. When King Pepin had heard these tydings, he grew wonderfully desperate, & presently called together all his Barons, & sat in Counsel what was requisite to be done in such a desperate plot. At last it was resolved, that king Pepin in person should depart into his own Land, to suppress the Usurper, which he accordingly did, & coming unto Valentine, he began to speak unto the king, Fair Uncle, it were most requisite that I tarry here to gather new Forces, to rescue my Father, & the 12 Peers of France. Do so (quod king Pepin) & if it so fall out, that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh supplies against the Pagans, that you may with more ease compass what you intend to do.



GAAP. L.

Now Valentine, under the shape of a Physitian, went into India to see and speak with the fair Clerimond. And how Valentine rode away with her. And how the K. of Brittain was given to K. Pepin by treason. And how Valentine took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, and all the rest of the Prisoners. And how the Emperor, Orson, & the Green Knight, kept a strong Garrison.

Garrison in this Castle, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* compassed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orson*, and the Green Knight, left the Castle, and came to the succour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the Christians issued out of the City of *Angory*, and bid battel to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly slew his own Father; and how *Myllon Dangler* returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orson* into *Greece*.

Y Du have heard already, *þ. R.* *Pepin* brought newes unto *Valentine* of the *Lady Clerimond*, which having heard, it would not out of his mind, at last he resolved to pass from *Angory*, to *India*, accompanied with one *Squire*, & in *þ. Shape* of a *Physitian*, he went to *Sea* with the *Indian Merchants*, being arrived, he lay in the City at an *Inn-holders* house, till his *Gown* and other habiliments were in a readines. At his first entrance in this *Inn*, the *Host* asked him what he was, he said, a *Physitian*, and can cure any manner of disease. The *Host* believed him, and his *Squire* served him as his *Apothecary* or *Clerk*. In this manner, lying there about *time* 3 days, he called his *Host* to him, and desired him to get a man to go about the City, to make known his *Art*; and say why needeth help, that I may cure them, for I would fain get something to defray my charge while I lye in your house, but in the mean space, rather than you shall mistrust me, I will leave you a good pawn: Marry (*qd. the Host*) with all my heart, I accept your gage: So *Valentine* delivered him a rich *Mantle*, furred quite through with costly furs, and bad him bring before him that party, that should make known his *Art*. The *Host* went out, and brought him a ragged fellow, who had not any thing to hang upon him: *Valentine* yet was glad of such a fellow as this, and new cloathed him from head to foot, and said unto him: My friend, go thy ways into the City, and cry about the same, that there is come a *Physitian*, that can heal all manner of Diseases, even mad Men or Women, he will undertake to cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded; and passed from place to place, to publish this *Doctors* skill. At last these tydings came to the King, because he had given out, that he could recover mad folks to their former senses. So the King hearing good will to the

Lady Clerimond, sent for this Physician, although he had before him many Cripples, blind, lame, and crooked, at his Lodging, but he left them all, and came unto the King, for there lay the mark at which he aimed. Being come before the King, he did his obsequance in the name of the great God Jupiter, and the King said unto him: Sir, you be welcome to my Court, first dine, and then I shall tell you further the cause of my sending for you. The King being set and served, made Valentine also to be richly attended, a dinner being done; said unto him: Sir, I have a beautilous Lady in this Palace, whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly, she would by no means consent, until the term of one year was expired: I granted her to forbear that year, as she demanded, but at the end she was possessed with a Lunacy, insomuch that none durst come within her reach: sometimes she whistles, anon she cryeth out in a pitiful manner: another while she laugheth, and then she falleth into a flood of tears, so that my heart is over-charged with sorrow for her: Now if your skill extend it self to cure her, I will give you more wealth then you can ask: for my wife *Roxana* being dead, I would make her Queen of *India*. My Lord (qd. Valentine) fear not but she shall do well, for she is the harder to be cured, in that it hath seized her so long. Again, I must be with her all night, to mark the manner of her fits: you shall (quoth the King) have one appointed to bring you thither; but look to your self, lest she harm you.

Then one who waited on the Lady, guided Valentine to her window, now go thy way, & leave me alone. When Valentine beheld her in this desperate case, he said: Alas my love, you have bought me dear, as I have you, but by the Gods I swear, I shall never return again to *France*, till I have you along with me, or here lose my life. The Lady beheld him fearfully, & what object came first to hand, she shew'd at him, which much amazed Valentine. Then said Valentine, is this true madness, or but feigned? Dear Love (qd. he) tell me the truth; I am Valentine your Love, for whom I have suffered all this damage, think on the brazen head that you gave me, or of my brother *Orson* that had the string cut in his mouth, for how you were stoln away by the Enchanters. *At* *which* *the* *King* *had* *heard* *this* *the* *old* *Cl* *erimond* *remained* *for*

for joy; and being again recovered, she said: Alas my love, how many dangers have we passed through? you for me, & I for you: And now behold in what baseness I have carried my self for thee? Lady, Love dearly bought is the sweetest. By this time the Trumpets sounded to bring in the Kings Meat for Supper, so that he said unto the Lady: My love, I will go into the Pallace, but after Supper I will come again, for the King knoweth not but I am a Physitian, and hath sent for me to heal you, the Lady bad him go. Being come into the Pallace, as soon as the King saw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady,? Yes (quoth Valentine) to morrow you shall hear her speak as discreetly as ever she did. The King was so joyful thereat, that he gave unto him a rich Mantle, all beset with precious stones, and caused him to sit down at his own Table. After Supper, Valentine said unto the King, it is necessary I have a fire all this night in the chamber where my patient is, for she will be extreame sick all this night. Well, quoth the King, let all things be done, spare for no cost. Now Valentine taketh his way towards the Chamber of fair Clerimond, with one who carried wood to make this fire withal, which being done, he willed every one to depart, save only his Squire, then Valentine shut all the doors & windows, and said unto Clerimond: Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleasure, and casting his eye aside, he espied the Horse of Wood, and asked her whose it was, who answered Pacolets; then said Valentine; let us hence immediately; wherunto she consented.

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with Pacolets Horse, mounted him, with Clerimond and his Squire, in a Moon-shine night, and with great expedition hastened unto the City of Angory, being come thither, Valentine caused the gates thereof to be opened, and there was great joy for the Lady Clerimond. The next morning, Valentine caused her to be clad in rich habiliments, & married her. By this time the King knew of her escape, and grew furious, & said: Ha, thou false Enchanter, hast thou thus deceived me? If thou fall once again into my hands, I will quickly bereave thee of thy life, and so he caused pursuit to be made after Valentine, but all in vain, for they found him not. Here leave we them. Now I proceed to tell you of King Pepin, how he hastened into France to the succour



succour of Bertha his wife, and to chastise the Usurper. The King
 of Brittain not thinking what would happen, strengthened himself
 with all the forces he could make, and sent out proclamation, that
 all that could bear arms, should assist him into France. Hereupon
 Queen Bertha with her young Son Charles fled to Lyons to seek
 succour: At the same time lived a worthy and trusty Carl of An-
 joy, who favouring the Queen, and pitying her distress, fortified
 his Castle against the Britains, to whom the Queen sent 4000
 Horse to keep the passage. At last the King of Brittain had the
 Carl give him passage into France, but he answered, No: hereup-
 on there was appointed a band of soldiers, to lay siege at Argiers,
 but the Carl kept close within the City, and would not issue out
 thereof. During the siege was King Pepin come to Paris, & there
 was joyfully received, when the Queen understood he was at Pa-
 ris, she hastied unto him, and when she came before him, in tears,
 she said: dear Lord, revenge us on this Usurper. Lady (quoth the
 King) fear it not, So calling about him his Counsellours, and
 men

men of War, he made haste to furnish up his companions, & many there were, that voluntarily offered themselves to do the King any service. By this time the K. of Brittain heard that King Pepin was come against him with a great Army, which feared him, and not without cause. But see what followed, for his own friends betrayed him to K. Pepin, only to save their own estates, and make their peace the better with the K. So resolving hereupon, on a night they came to him, lying on his bed, & led him perforce before K. Pepin, who presently caused his head to be smitten off within the City of Paris. Now they thought that betrayed him, all was well; but the K. afterwards seized all their Lands into his own hands.

Now was Valentine much troubled in mind, how he should free the Emperour his father from imprisonment, for he knew well, that the Castle was not to be won by War or policy, nor by any thing but by treason. At last he resolved on a subtle plot, & thus it was. He put to Sea 12 Ships, manned with 2000 men, & laden with all manner of riches, as precious stones, & silks, and thus as Merchants arrived they before this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the shape of a Merchant, setting a rich Crown on his head, and said unto his men: be you all privately armed within the Ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Sarazens come aboard, put them to death. Then coming toward the Castle gate, with the Crown on his head, the Porter said, What bring you hither? Friend, said Valentine. I am a Merchant, going into Spain, and having many rich commodities, I hear say, that I might not pass without a tribute, on pain of death. Said the porter, I will go to my Lady, and bring you an answer: so he went to Galazy and told his message, the Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels aboard, she said to her Seneschal: Go, and receive the tribute, due to me, of the Merchant, and take along with you a sufficient company of Souldiers, lest they should offer you injury. He did as he was commanded, and coming to the Ships, they found inestimable Gems, insomuch as they were ravished there-with, so they taking the value of the tribute due to the Lady, suddenly the Christians that lay hid in the Ship, set upon them, & slew them. Then Valentine said unto them, except we go forward

this enterprize, we shall never gain the Castle; wherefore he caused fifty of his men to put on the Sarazens Cloths over their Armors, and so lading themselves with silks and precious stones, took their way towards the Castle.

The Porter tyed up the Lyons, let down the Draw-bridge, and thirsting after some great reward, went beyond his bounds, insomuch as Valentine led him to the ships, being come, Valentine shewed him their dead bodies, & said, I will make you like one of these, if you give me not passage into this Castle. Sir (quoth the Porter) I shall do it. Why then (qd. Valentine) I will reward thee. Come said the Porter, & bring all those men whom you have clad in the habit of the Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the Castle, and let them enter one by one, which they did; so being entered, the Porter shewed them a secret postern, which Valentine having gotten, caused all the doors to be set open, then wounded he his horn, at which all those in the ships hastened unto them. Then he entered the Chamber of the Lady Galazy, who was astonished thereat: but he said: Lady, fear not, for I have ventured the Seas, to have a sight of your royal presence; then she had him welcom, and highly feasted him. Valentines men having entered the Castle, with their shouts so affrighted the Lady, that in weeping manner she said unto him: Courteous Knight, save my virginity. Lady (qd. he) fear not, for there is none that dares attempt any dishonour towards your person. By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, and Valentine hastning unto the Dungeon, did break it open, and cryed out aloud; All you that be alive come forth. Orson knowing his voice, replied: Brother you are welcome, how came you hither? Valentine said, I am come to set you at liberty. At these words, the Emperour fell into a swoon, but Orson suddenly recovered him: then came they out of the Dungeon in ragged cloaths, and ill-coloured faces: but the Christians rebelled for the space of 7 days in the Castle, and Orson falling in love with Galazy, after the death of Fezon married her, by whom he had a son named Orsay, who after had the Empire at Constantinople.

These affairs being thus brought to an end, a counsel was called what was best to be done; at last they resolved to leave a Garrison to resist the enemy: Some said it was fitting that Haufrey
and

and Henry should undertake this task: but Haufray replied, not we, for we are determined to go to *France*, to serve our Father. *Ed.* Orson, if you be so resolved, we have small reason to weep for your departure, for there is nothing but treason in you. At these words, Haufray & Henry was displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was resolved that the *Emperoz* should take his rest, & his Son Orson, and the *Green Knight* should remain there to defend the Castle, whilst Valentine & the rest addrested themselves for Angory. Now will we look into the treason of Haufray and Henry, who being come into *France*, laid a plot to take away the life of their father, little Charles his son, & Bertha the Queen. Being come to Paris, the King royally feasted them, & after demanded what news of the *Emperoz*, Valentine, Orson, & the rest? *Ed.* the traitors, they were all slain in a battel at Angory, at which, the King wared wondrous sad. After this they poisoned the King & Queen. Now little Charles was still living, who (as the Gods would have it) happened under the safe keeping of Myllon Daugler.

The King and Queen being both thus treacherously poisoned, the two Traitors seemed to be exceeding sorrowful, but *D.* Myllon Daugler, being a man of a valiant and couragious spirit, forthwith caused a counsell to be holden, wherein he would have croon-ed young Charles R. of *France*, but Haufray and Henry by bribes, corrupted the Lords, that Charles was held too young. Hereupon *D.* Myllon was committed to Prison, for standing on the child's part, and Charles held as a Kitchen boy.

A little after, it happened that Haufray commanded Charles to turn a spit, but the boy being full of Majesty, took up the spit, and felled him to the earth. At this, our steps Henry, thinking to smite the child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him such a blow on the ear, that the blood issued out of his mouth. Then Haufray commanded his men to lay hold upon him, but when came a Knight which took Charles by the hand, and conveyed him to Paris. The Traitors perceiving Charles was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. Hereupon *D.* Myllon told his Wife thereof who was sister to Charles. The Lady could not behold the same without tears, but vowed that they should dearly pay for these treasons, and forthwith caused letters to be written into Angory,

unto Valentine and the twelve Peers of France. These Letters came first into the hands of Valentine; who could not chuse but weep at this act of Villany; The Lords perceiving his tears asked the cause, he answered: K. *Pepin* and the Queen are dead, and as for *Charles*, the two accursed Brothers, *Haufray* and *Henry*, have chased him out of the Country, imprisoned D. *Myllon*, and all that held on young *Charles* his side: these are the contents of these Letters, and the Lady that sendeth them, requireth help to apprehend these Rebels. These sad tydings put them to their wits end, and lying between two extreams, knew not which way to take, for *Brandisser* was daily expected with an army of many thousands. At last Valentine said: Ere to morrow night I will set free Duke *Myllon*, or else my skill shall deceive me, at which they laughed heartily. Valentine departed, and with *Pacolets* horse he suddenly arrived at Paris, where by his art he opened the Gates, and released all the Prisoners, and being shewed the Chamber where D. *Myllon* was, he entered the same, who being fast asleep, he awaked him, & said: Sir, I am *Valentine*, which am come to set you free. Then he mounted him on his horse, and bad him not speak, for he was to pass through the air. The D. prayed him to pass by the Castle of Angier, that he might but see his Wife, which he did, and being come to the Lady thereof, who presently ran & kissed him, demanding of him whether he went? Lady (qd. he) I go to fight against the Infidels, to bring home the twelve Peers of France, with an Army to over-throw *Haufray* & *Henry*, and to succour *Charles*. Having refreshed themselves with meat, they set forth towards Hungary. Being come, they came before all the Barons, who were much astonished at Valentines art, greatly desiring to learn it, but he would teach it no man. Now was *Brandisser* with his host, come within a mile of Angoyr, and there planted his siege. The Citizens hearing hereof, shut up their Gates, drew up their Bridges, and after got on the Walls, lying a month together, without making any resistance.

The Emperour hearing that *Brandisser* had begirt Angoyr, with so huge an Army, resolved to leave the strong Castle to the guard of a Knight. So the Emperour, *Orson*, & the *Græn* &c. took shipping, accompanied with a 1000 souldiers, being at Sea, they saw

a great fleet of ships coming to them: and at last they found it to be a Pagan with 1000 men, going to the succour of Brandisser: the Christians longing to fight with the Pagans, fell upon them, so that there chanced a bloody battel: great valour was shewn on both sides, but they knew not whether the victory would incline. At last the Pagan Admiral encountred a Christian Knight, tumbled him over a ship-board: Orson standing by him, grew angry, and taking his Axe, struck him stark dead. This deed discouraged the Pagans, that they withdrew themselves, all that night ready to fight, having lost 15 tall ships, and 4000 men. Then the Emperour said: Lords, let us arm our selves with such weapons, as here we have seized from the Pagans, which they presently did, but this enterprise was fatal. For the Emperour was slain by his own son Valentine, who took him for an Infidel, as hereafter you shall hear. But here they hoys sail again, and at last arrived in Angory.

After a months siege, Valentine sent a defiance to Brandisser, offering him battel. The Christians divided their battel into ten Squadrons, whereof D. Myllon was their General: The second Sampson of Orleance, the third Carl of Vandosm, the fourth Carl of Campagne, the fifth Quintine of Normandy, the sixth the D. of Burgoyn, the seventh the Carl of Dampmartin, the eighth the Carl of Allerve, the ninth the Marshal of Constantinople, the tenth was Valentine, who added courage unto all the rest. Being in order, they issued out of the City to assail Brandisser, who had divided his army into fifteen Squadrons, & that Squadron which had the least commander was a King. At the sojning of these battels, a certain Pagan (that never before had been in wars) couched his Spear in his rest, and would be the foremost man, but Valentine thinking to cool his pride, ran against him, and struck him down dead. Then they fell to it pell mell, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly. The Indian King, entering the battel, made very much slaughter, but Valentine meeting him, gave him such a counter-buff, that he sat him besides his Horse.

At this present the Christians got the better, and caused the Infidels to give ground, but there came in a Sarazen Captain, with 30000 men, and continued the battel more hotter then before. By this time Lucar lighted on the Indian King, & lent him succor.

Now the Christians began to retire, insomuch that they had been forced to a shameful flight, had not two valiant knights arrived in Angory, with 700 men at arms (the which lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, and suffered much misery) entered the field. The one of them brought into France the daughter of a rich Admiral, called Claridine, & caused her to be baptized. The name of the one was Reynard of Province, the other, Myllon of Dyon. At their approach, the Pagans were much discomfited, for Myllon of Dyon, at his first encounter, smote B. Lucar stark dead, & at next, another B. called Rubres, which accident much amazed Brandisfer. At another part of the battel rushed in Reynard, & slew many of them. Valentine wondered at these two Knights of Chivalry, & coming towards them, said: Lords, you are welcome, I pray you what are you, or by what chance came you hither? Friend (qd. Reynard) we are Lords of *France*, and lately come from the holy Sepulchre, who hearing of these wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. I am called *Reynard* Lord of *Province*, and my companion is called *Myllon* of *Dyon*. Quoth Valentine: Once again heartily welcome, for *Myllon* Daugler is here, and all the Peers of *France*; so they joyfully rushed afresh into the Battel. All this while the Indian King had a spleen at Valentine for his last disgrace, & finding him out, accompanied only with three other Kings, they so encountered Valentine, that they did smite him and his horse to the ground. Being down, he quickly recovered, and drawing out his sword, defended himself therewith, but with much danger. At last D. Myllon, Sampson, and Gravis, came unto his succor, getting a fresh horse for him. Valentine being mounted, made his course against the Indian B. again, and striking him down, took from him his shield, which he kept, (for he had lost his own). This ended; Tydings came that a great fleet of Sarazens was coming near unto the Haven. Hereupon Valentine said: Lords, let us presently go and strengthen the passages, so Valentine and the D. Myllon of Dyon, went unto the Haven, but there were all friends and Christians, amongst whom was his father the Emperoz of Greece, of whom you shall hear more at large.

The Emperoz having landed his men, Valentine saluted him with his spear in his rest. The Emperoz (who bare the shield of a

Sarazen, unknown) encountred with his Son. At last Valentine ran his spear quite through his fachers body, & he fell down dead. His father being dead: he said: Montioy vive Greece. Orson seeing his father dead, did weep, and said unto Valentine: Brother, there is small conquest in this, for you have slain your Father. When he heard him say so, he fell in an extasie from his horse. To this lamentation of the two Brothers, came Reynard of Province, and Myllon of Dyon, to comfort them, saying: Knight, have patience, for tears cannot recal him; alas, said Valentine, what have I done! It were happy for me, if death would take me from this world: I have committed this fact, detestable both to God & men: O what will become of me? My life have I passed away in troubles, torments and cares, and now to add more sorrow to my days, I have shed the blood of my dear Father. Brother Orson, take my sword, and cut off my head, that the earth may not bear so bloody a Butcher. Brother, said Orson, depart not thus, but repent, and no doubt but you shall be forgiven. So comforting him in this manner, at last they got him to his horse, whereon being mounted, he ran throughout the Pagan troops so furiously, that all they that stood in his way perished. Now began the battel to encrease, and King Christopher slew the Christians on every side. At last Valentine meeting him, gave him such a Canvasado, that he pierced his body quite through. In this battel the Duke Myllon of Dyon and Reynard of Province, rushed so fierce into the battel of the enemy, that they were taken Prisoners, yet notwithstanding their adverse fortunes, they got their liberties once again; & made Charles King of France, with honor and joy; to the destruction of Haulfray and Henry & two notable traitors; yet was not this fierce, long, & tedious battel ended, for they stood to it manfully on either side. Valentine being careless of life, at last met with Brandisser, who encountred each other so fiercely, that both fell to the earth, but Valentine suddenly recovered himself, took the R. such a blow that he clabe his head. R. Brumant seeing his Brother slain, departed out of the field, with the Admiral of Cordes, and R. Josueh, who caused a retreat to be sounded. The Christians following, slew many thousands, & others leapt into the Sea, & drowned themselves. So the night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City.

next morning in burying the dead, there was great lamentation for the Emperoz of Greece. Then his body was royally interred in the City of Angory, but Valentine could not be comforted.

The Pagans being thus twice put to the worse before Angory, D. Myllon took his leaue of Valentine to return unto France, saying: Valentine, I would I could return as swiftly back, as you brought me hither? Friend, (said Valentine) I would I had never known the Art, for it hath brought nothing but vexation & shame on me, & him an untimely death that taught it me; so the D. Myllon departed. Valentine and Orson intended to go for Greece, but before their departure, they Crowned the Green Knight King of Angory. After leaue taken, Orson called the fair Galazy unto him, and said: Love, know you are with Child by me, yet I cannot wed you, for that I have another wife, but before I go, I will make certain lands over unto you for your maintenance, that you may hereafter live of your self, without the help of any other. All these offers she denied, but saying: she would go to sea with him, and after confine me unto some religious house, wherein I may spend the residue of my days. Agreed (quoth Orson) and so he took her with him to Constantinople. Being come hither, they sent word to the Empress of their fathers death, but concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was sorrowful for her Husband, but joyed at the sight of her child: en: so did all the City likewise, making great triumphs throughout the same. The Empress being one day at dinner, said unto her Sons: Valentine, it must be agreed betwixt you, who shall be Emperoz. Orson replied, it appertaineth not to me to take the first place: Brother, let it be as I say, for I am beholding to you; you nothing to me, therefore take the Empire and sway the Scepter.

At last it was agreed on, that they should jointly govern, but Valentine continued not long in a state of dignity: for shortly after, on a morning he called to him Clerimond, and said thus unto her: Understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my conscience remaineth still troubled for the fact, and I am therefore minded to go on Pilgrimage. Commend me to my Mother, and my Brother Orson, both which I charge you not to see till fifteen day. he passed on, & then gave him this Letter, all which I have now consent unto, although in tears.

CHAP. II.

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how *K. Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his Wife, and how he betrayed *Orson* and the *Green Knight*. And how *Galeran* delivered his letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made. How *Bellysant* and *Clerimond* came to know King *Hugon*'s treason, and how *Galeran* lost his head. And how *Orson* and the *Green Knight* were set free.

Then Valentine said: Lady, cease your tears; and give me your Wedding Ring; the having done so, he brake it in two peeces, keeping the one half, and giving her the other, saying;



My Love, keep thy half, and whatsoever you hear, believe nothing till you see this other half, which I possess. At these words he embraced her, and wept bitterly, and so departed, only one Page with him. Having long travelled, at last he came to Rome, there coming into the presence of a Hermit, he confessed the death of his father, the Hermit seeing him so penitent, enjoined him penance: 1. Change thy Habit, & go barely cloathed, and 7 years lye under the stairs of thy Palace, without speaking any words, thou shalt neither eat nor drink, but of the scraps that come from thine own table, do this, and fear not thy sins. Sir, said Valentine, all this I will do; & after he had dined, he departed, without speaking to his servant: after this, Valentine entred into a wood, feeding upon roots, and he continued there so long, that he was forgotten amongst men.

Orson having now read the Letter that Clerimond delivered him, wept bitterly, insomuch as the Lady said unto him: Brother, cease your laments: Alas, said Orson, I have great cause, for this Letter sheweth, that my Brother will never return. Hereat the Lady swooned, and recovering her self, she said: Why hath my Love hidden his intent from me? But all her sorrow could not call him home again. Tydings was spread through the City, that Valentine would never return: Clerimond wailed, Belysant complained, & Orson sighed. Now (as the story saith) the Lady Fezon hearing that Orson had got another Lady with Child, she dyed with grief. Being dead, Orson made a years solemnity of her funeral, and after married Galazy, of whom you have heard before.

Now I shall shew you how Valentine came back to Constantinople in beggerly weeds, insomuch that he was not known, going from house to house a begging. At last he went into his Brothers Pallace about supper time, and those that waited on his table, beat him away: Orson seeing them so curst, bad them let him alone, for I am willing that all poor men should be received, for my brother Valentines sake, that so we may hear tydings of him. After this they brought him meat & wine, but he espying a basket wherein scraps were put, eat thereof, which amazed the beholders. Night being come, the servants asked Orson if he would let that counterfeit abide in his Palace, I do, Orson) for it may be for some

how

vow which he hath made. Thus abode Valentine, and made his bed under the stairs, of straw. On the morrow, Orson passing by, gave him money, after came his Mother, and his Wife Clerimond, and they gave him money, saying : How can you indure thus naked, without Cloaths? this night you shall have some provided for you. They being gone, he gave his money to two poor men standing by him, who scoffed him for his labour, next day at dinner, they gave him variety of meats, which he refused, and made signs for the Alms-basket : Orson to try him yet further, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then (said Orson) surely this is some vow that he hath made unto the Gods. Thus Valentine remained within the Palace without being known, that all men thought him dead.

In these days there was a King of Hungaria, named Hugon, who heard that Valentine had given over the Empire of Greece, unto his Brother Orson. This Hugon came to Constantinople, and was honourably received. After his arrival he came to the Lady Clerimond, and said: I am King of *Hungaria* and have no wife, and for that purpose am I come hither to crave your love, I know that *Valentine* is dead, or else that he will never return, wherefore Lady grant me thy love, and thou shalt be Queen of *Hungaria*. Sir, qu. the Lady, I thank you for your Kingly proffer, but to be your Wife, I cannot, for sure my *Valentine* liveth, and for seven year I will every day expect his return; besides, when I make choice of a husband, my Brother *Orson* and the Green Knight must know, for without their leave I will never marry. Then he went towards Orson, and demanded of him, if he heard any tydings of his Brother. Great K. (qu. Orson) no, I heard that he left me a Letter, the which his wife delivered me, and certified me that he is gone to exile, and beareth about him half the Ring that he was married withal, the other half he left with her; charging her that she believe nothing of him, till she see the other half which he possessed. The Gods be his good speed, qu. Hugon, for he was a worthy Knight. But one thing (qu. Hugon, have I more to acquaint you with, I am determined to take a journey to *Jerusalem*, to visit the holy Shrine, so you would bear me company. With all my heart (qu. Orson) but let us go to *Antioch*, and take with us the Green Kr. who is K. thereof: it shall be

To *qd. Hugon*, to *Orson* taking leave of his Mother and his wife *Galazy* came to *Angory*, & was received with great joy. Having traisted there, they took their way to *Jerusalem*. Being come into the City, (while they were beholding diuers Monuments) *Hugon* stole away from them to the *K. of Sury*, and said: I have a Message to deliver, worth your attention. There is newly arrived here two worthy Knights; that are your greatest enemies, for they slew *K. Brandisser*, *K. Lucar*, and your brother *K. of India*. When *Rabastre* heard all that he could say, he was very sorry for the death of his brother, & said unto *Hugon*: can you deliver me these two Knights? yea (said the traitor) so you will give me their golden seals. Sir, *qd. he*, them & much more will I give you: Then hearken, send unto the Patriarks house, and he will tell you where they are. The King presently sent out 800 armed men, and found them at dinner, then they took them, and brought them unto the *K.* False enemies, (*qd. the K.*) to our lives and religion, my heart even leapeth for joy, that I have gotten you, tell me what are your names? My name is *Orson*, and this is the Green Knight: You are the men I wisht for, & there is another called *Valentine*, had I him also, I would use you all alike: then he caused their seals to be taken away, and given to *Hugon*, and they to be cast into a dungeon, and fed only with bread and water. Now all this while they knew not what was become of *Hugon*; for they thought verily he had been slain by the *Sarazens*, while he was plotting with another Traitor in the City, called *Galeran*, and began thus to salute him. *Galeran*, my desire is to imploy your secrecie in a matter of import, and I will reward thee sufficiently. Unkle (*qd. Galeran*) fear me not, I know your drift; you would obtain the lovely *Clerimond*; True (said *Hugon*) therefore let us write a Letter in the name of *Orson*, and we will seal it with his Seal, and the Letter shall be thus framed.

Orson, by the power of the Gods, Emperor of Greece, unto the thrice Renowned Sovereign Lady, my Mother: unto you my Love *Galazy*, and my Sister *Clerimond* greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, requiring nothing but patience: Ladies, know that I have found my Brother *Valentine* on his death bed, at *Jerusalem*, and a little before his last gasp, he charged me to salute *Clerimond* in his Name, and command her, that if ever

she marry again, she take some Prince to her Husband, the cause why he sent not the half Ring, was, for that it was stollen from him in his sickness.

This Letter thus finished, Orson wrote another Letter, saying :

Right well-beloved Sister, we have said enough about my Brother Valentine, but now we wish you for the great beauty wherewith you are adorned, first to accomplish the desire of the dead: secondly, to encrease your honor, we advise you to match with Hugon, Prince of Hungary, as you will avoid our displeasure. And for further authority, we have sealed these letters with our own Seals. Again, know, that we cannot yet return, for great wars is fallen between the Infidels and Christians: so we leave you to the tuition of the Gods...

These Letters being sealed, Hugon gave them to Galeran to bear to Constantinople, himself following after: By this means thinking to get the Lady. Galeran being in Constantinople, delivered his Letters to the Lady Belysant, who commanded that he should be highly feasted. Afterward, she called one to read them, and Valentine lying in the Hall, heard the contents thereof. Being read, the Ladies grew exceeding sorrowful for the death of Valentine, but especially the Lady Clerimond, piteously lamenting his misfortunes, said: How unhappy amongst women am I! Alas Valentine, why went I not with thee, to see thy body laid up safe in the earth? Unkind Brother and the Green Knight, why are you two such mortal enemies, as to wish me to marriage so soon after my Valentines death? Seeing I have lost so noble, courageous, and a loving Knight? the Mirror of Chivalry, the Rose of honor, the example of courtesie, and the patron of truth. Death, hast thou not one dart left to shoot at this poor breast, for seeing my life is nothing but sorrow, I will never have other Husband, but in sorrow will I spend the rest of my days. All this did Valentine behold, which he pitied, but fearing to be known, he buried it in silence. Belysant seeing Clerimond thus violent, said: Daughter, have patience. You know he was my Son, and I sorrow for him at my heart, but when I consider that he cannot be fetcht back therewith, I pass it over, and rather think on what your Brother, and my Son Orson doth advise you unto. Good Mother (saith the Lady)

say no more, for I shall never marry, and therewith went weeping to her Chamber, and *Valentine* he lay under the stairs, musing how these treasons should come about. Some four days after, *King Hugon* came to Constantinople, and was received with great honor, but *Clerimond* shewed him no good entertainment. Being there, he said unto the Empress: You understand of the death of your Son, for whom I am sorrow. But it is agreed upon, that I shall marry the Lady? Sir (qd. *Clerimond*) I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: all this treason *Valentine* heard. But in the end the matter was so urged, that *Hugon* had the Lady, which much encreased his joys, but they were short.

Valentine having ended his Orisons to the Gods, the Oracle made answer to him on this manner; *Valentine*, get thee out of the City, there thou shalt find without the gates a Pilgrim, take his Pilgrim weeds, and when thou hast put them on, get thee to thy Palace, and there thou shalt reveal before all comers, the Treason practised against thy love, for in this disguise thou canst not be discried. *Valentine* did as he was commanded, came to the Court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladies, & amongst them was the Traitor *Hugon*, even he that uttered such reproachful words against *Clerimond*. Now *Valentine* came to *Belysant*, saying: Lady, I beseech you shew me the wife of *Valentine*, whereat *Hugon* blushing, replied; Pilgrim, get thee gone into the Kitching, for this is no place for thee. Sir, said *Valentine*, I would fain do a message to her; wouldst thou? Said the Lady, I am she whom thou desirest to see: Then thus, I have lately seen your love *Valentine*, that by me sendeth salutations, willing me to say, that within three days he will be with you. Pilgrim (quoth the Lady) advise well thy self what thou speakest, for I heard my love is dead. Lady (qd. the Pilgrim) believe it not; for I protest to deliver my body to death, if it be not true as I have said: *Hugon* hearing these words related to the Ladies, secretly mounted his horse, & never returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were much amazed at this Pilgrims tale, & offered to feast him, but he would not, only he said to them, Ladies pardon me I pray, for I have certain companions in the Town which I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: yet *Clerimond* would gratifie him for his news, giving him money which

which he bountifully bestowed again upon the Servants.

Presently after it was demanded what was become of K. Hugon, a Damoisel standing by, said: I saw him now take horse, but what is become of him I cannot tell.

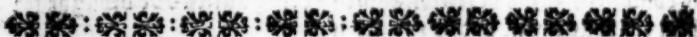
Upon these words Galeran came in, and they demanded of him what was become of his Uncle Hugon, who making no reply, Bellysant grew enraged; and said: You shall not escape till you have revealed the Treason Hugon hath practised against us. Then Galeran said: Lady take mercy on me, and I shall tell you all: Say on, I pardon thee. My Uncle is guilty of treason, and hath sold to the Pagans, the Emperor Orson, and the Green Knight, which tale soze daunted the assembly, but Galeran was presently hanged. Then Valentine leaving the habit of a Pilgrim, returned again unto the Palace. Clerimond espying him, said: Poor man, where have you been? Methinks you seem displeased, because I said, I will not marry. Valentine replied not at all, but left her, yet he, not so contented at his desertion, caused a costly quilt to be brought for him to lodge upon, but he refused it.

King Sary having Orson and the Green Knight in hold, caused them to be brought before him, and said unto them: Lords, you see you are now at my mercy, wherefore I vow, you shall never escape with life, except you resign back unto me the City of Angory, which you withhold from me. Orson replied, we will never consent hereto, except thou give K. Hugon unto us. The King said unto them, speak not of him, for he is the traitor which hath sold you into my hands, and hath carried with him your seals. Orson marvelled much hereat, and swore that he would never rest, until he were revenged on him, and so did the Green Knight also.

Now it fell out that these Prisoners were content to yield to the Kings demand, and so returned to Constantinople. Being come home, Clerimond told him, that he had heard tidings of Valentine, which much rejoiced Orson, who lying with his Wife that night, got a Son called Morant, who after ruled Angory. Not long after, Orson gathered an host of men to go for Angory; which when Hugon heard, he offered to him the same City, a four horse load of gold, and if there were any man durst call him Traitor; (Orson excepted) he would fight with him. The Green Knight

accepted

accepted his challenge, & they armed themselves, & the *Green R.* came first into the Lists. All things set in order they encountered each other with their spears, next with their Swords, but at last the *Green R.* gave *R. Hugon* such a stroke on his Helm, that he cut a part of his head even off at his Shoulders, so that he fell into a Swound. Thus the *Green R.* got the honour of the day. *Hugon* reviving again, requested a Confessor, and unfolding all the treason, presently dyed in the place. *Orson* notwithstanding, caused his body to be sumptuously interred, as to the person of a King appertained. At last, *Hugon's* treason being blotted abroad, by the *Peoples* consent, rendered the City to the Emperor *Orson*. This being ended, they returned into Constantinople. At whose coming home *Valentine* rejoiced, but *Clerimond* marvelled that she saw not *Valentine* as the Pilgrim had said unto her, little suspecting that he was so near her, for he remained under the Palace stairs, where he shall shortly end his life, and then he shall be known.



C H A P. LII.

How at the end of seven years, *Valentina* died in the Palace of Constantinople, and how *Orson* turned Hermet.

AT the end of seven years, *Valentine* fell into a mortal disease, whereof he dyed. Before his death, an Angel appeared to him, saying: *Valentine*, thy glass is run, for within four hours thou shalt dye: whereat he greatly rejoiced, making signs for pen, ink, and paper: when he had it, he wrote that it was himself that appeared like a Pilgrim, and discovered the treason. After putting to it his Name, he closed up the paper, putting in the other half of the Ring that he had kept; shortly after he laid him down and dyed.

When *Orson* saw that he was dead, he was troubled in mind. The poor man being dead, held a Letter in his hand, which *Orson* would have taken out, but could not: then came *Clerimond*, and as soon as she laid hold thereon, the hand opened it self. *Clerimond* breaking up the Letter, and knowing the half Ring, said: Lords, we shall shortly hear news of *Valentine*: so a Secretary was called in, read it: at the reading hereof, went in veneration on each side,

side, but especially of Clerimond, who sitting upon the dead body, said : Alas, I have lost all my joy, comfort and hopes; for that my Love should die so near my person, and I know not of it. Now great preparation were made for his Funeral Rites, he was interred in great magnificence in Constantinople. Clerimond afterward betook her to a single life. Thus having shewn the death of Valentine, and what became of Clerimond; Let us return to Orson, who ruled the Empire of Constantinople seven years, and by his second Wife Galazy, he had a Son named Morant, who after was King of Angory.

After 7 years were expired Galazy dyed, for whom the Emperor Orson was exceeding sorrowful, and in the end betook him to the Woods, whereas he fed on Bread and Roots, and such as he found. It happened one night that he saw a Vision, it seemed to him more glorious then his tongue could utter. After this Vision he awaked, and being astonied hereat, with tears he came to the Green Knight, and said : Sir, I see the uncertainty of the world, for which I am willing to resign my Estate and Children unto you; I see them well educated, that they may by you be made fit to govern such a people, for I will spend the rest of my days in solitary contemplation. When the Green Knight had heard these words, he wept bitterly, but Orson recomforted him, saying: Weep not, but pray for me, as I for you, that you may accomplish that which I put you in trust withal. With this Orson departed, charging the Green Knight not to tell it to any. So taking his way towards a Wood, he there spent the remainder of his days. The Green Knight after so governed his Children, that they carefully spent their time on earth, and followed their Father to his Grave.

F I N I S.

The Table.

How K. *Pepin* banished his Queen *Bertha*, and how he gave his Sister *Bellysant* in marriage to *Alexander* the Emperour of *Constantinople*. chap. 1

How the Arch-Priest of *Constantinople*, betrayed the Emperour his Lord and Master, in making love to the Empress, and what evil followed thereupon. chap. 2

How the Arch-Priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Bellysant*, to save his own honour, practised Treason against the innocent Lady. chap. 3

How the Arch-Priest put on him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Empress *Bellysant* who was lately banished. chap. 4

How *Bellysant* in her banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose Names were *Valentine* and *Orson*, and how she lost them. chap. 5

Of the Bear that bare away one of the Lady *Bellysants* Children. chap. 6

How by the Counsel of the Arch-Priest, new Customes, and Taxations were raised through the City of *Constantinople*, and how the Treason came to light. chap. 7

How the Emperour by the Counsel of his Nobility, sent for K. *Pepin* to see the Combat fought between the Arch-Priest, and the Merchant. chap. 8

How the Merchant and the High-Priest encountred at the place appointed about the clearing of *Bellysant*, and what a glorious victory did betide the Merchant. chap. 9

How K. *Pepin* returned from *Constantinople* into *France*, and after sailed to *Rome*, to fight against the *Sarazens* that had surprized that City. chap. 10

How K. *Pepin* besieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* jested with the Admiral of the *Sarazens*, and slew him, whereby the City was won again from the *Sarazens*. chap. 11

How

The Table.

- How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the King did shew to-
wards *Valentine*. chap. 12
- How *Valentine* conquered his Brother *Orson*, in the Forrest of *Or-*
leance. chap. 13
- How *Valentine* having conquered *Orson* the wild man, departed
from the Forrest towards *Orleance*, whereas *K. Pepin* was resi-
dent. chap. 14
- How *Haufray* and *Henry* took Counsel together, to Murther *Va-*
lentine in the Chamber of *Eglantine*. chap. 15
- How Duke *Savary* sent unto King *Pepin* for aid against the Green
Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage against his
will. chap. 16
- How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitrain*, at a solemn just there
holden, to bare away the love of the beautilous Lady *Feron*.
chap. 17
- How *Haufray* and *Henry*, accompanied with a troop of their Con-
federates, lay in Ambush to take away the life of *Valentine*.
chap. 18
- How *Orson* and *Grygar* fought together, how *Orson* returned victor,
caused *Grygar* to confess the Treason, who was after hanged, and
Valentine delivered from the Dungeon. chap. 19
- How *Grygar* being vanquished by *Orson*, confessed his Treason to
K. Pepin, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* had been the only plotters
thereof, against the worthy *Valentine*. chap. 20
- How *Orson* conquered the Green Knight, and what followed there-
of, also, how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him; but could
not overcome him. chap. 21
- How *Valentine* took good advice, and sent *Orson* on the morrow
(in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, and how *Orson* o-
vercame him. chap. 22
- Orson* having conquered the Green Knight, *Valentine* caused him to
be Christned, and sending him to King *Pepin*; had knowledge
of his Father and Mother, by means of the Green Knight.
chap. 23
- How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Feron*,
an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge he gave
unto him. chap. 24

The Table.

How *K. Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephews, by the report of *Blandiman*: and how the Green Knight submitted himself, according to his promise made unto *Valentine*. chap. 25

How King *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to bear these tydings: and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty *Souldan*, who had beleagured *Constantinople*. chap. 26

How the Green Knight jsted against the two *Sarazens*, and having slain the once, the other fled: and how King *Pepin* and his Host was lodged within *Constantinople*. chap. 27

How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle, where fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen Head they had knowledge of their Parents. chap. 28

How (when as *Valentine* was before the Castle, talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewailed the love of *Valentine*. And how he jsted for the entrance, and overcame the Seneſchal. chap. 29

How *Valentino* shewed *Clerimond* her Brothers Ring, which the Green Knight gave him, & how he questioned with the Brazen Head, which told him from whence he was descended. ch. 30

How the Gyant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*, by the means of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter. chap. 31

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugal*, to see the Lady *Belysant*, *Valentines* Mother, and of his returning back, and the news that he brought. chap. 32

How *Valentine* and *Orson* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how he committed them to Prison; with their woful lamentation. chap. 33

How *Pacolet* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies. chap. 34

How by Art *Pacolet* set free *Valentine* and *Orson* from the Prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the fair *Clerimond*. ch. 35

How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus*, and sailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*. chap. 36

How King *Ferragus* assembled all his men of war to take revenge upon *Valentine* and his sister *Clerimond*; and how he followed them into *Aquitain*. chap. 37

The Table.

- How the Duke of *Aquitain* was taken prisoner in the battel by *Ferragus*, and how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*. ch. 38
- How *Orson* tryed the constancy of the Lady *Fezon*, before he married her. chap. 39
- How *Ferragus* the Gyant strengthened his forces by the aid of King *Trompart* and the Enchanter *Adrimain*. ch. 40
- Of the pittiful tale the Empress made to *Valentine* her Son before his farewell to *Constantinople*. And what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Unkle. ch. 41
- How *Valentine* and the Green Knight were taken prisoners in the battel of *Constantinople*, by the Souldan *Moradin* & his men. ch. 42
- How *Pacolet* by enchantment delivered *Valentine* and the Green Knight out of the bondage of the Soldan, and how *Pacolet* couzened the Soldan when he had him upon his Horse, and instead of carrying him into *Portugal*, brought him into *Constantinople*, where he was hanged. ch. 43
- How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitain*, to succour *Ferragus* and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*. And how the King of *Inde* caused King *Trompart's* head to be struck off; and how he would have married with *Clerimond*, and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the shape of a woman. And how *Ferragus* was slain, and how *Orson* and the Duke went with an army to *Constantinople*, to succour the Emperour, and how *Orson* led along with him his Mother. And how all the Pagans were slain before *Constantinople*, and how the Emperour received his Son *Orson*, and his Wife *Bellyfant* with joy. ch. 44
- How King *Pepin* took leave of the Emperour at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* faint-ed, and left the knife in the bed, and accused *Orson* falsly of Treason, and how the knife was found in the Kings bed. And how *Orson* claimed combat against his accusers, when they would have judged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond*, arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end he slew the Dragon, and how *Valentine* after the conquest of the Dragon, caused the King of *Antioch*, and all his land to be baptiz'd, and of the lawless love of the Queen *Roxamond*. And how the King of *Antioch*

The Table.

roch was put to death for renouncing his *Mahometry*, by *Brandiffer* his wives father, and how the Emperor of *Greece*, and the *Green Knight* were taken Prisoners by *Brandiffer*. ch. 43
How *Clerimond* after the year was past, feigned her self mad, because she would not wed the King of *Inde*. And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart*, upon the King of *Inde*. And how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy*, wedded *Rozamond* the fair Daughter of *Brandiffer*, and how *Valemine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breath out defiance, and of the answer he brought from the *Indian King*. And how *Rozamond* found a way to be taken, and led unto the *Indian King*, and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against King *Pepin*; and how King *Pepin* took the City of *Angory*. chap. 46
How *Valentine* returned back to *India* after the Battel, and bare with him the dead body of K. *Murgalan*; and how he heard tydings of his Father, and how *Pacolei* freed the *Indian King*, & left *Brandiffer* in Prison. And how K. *Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian*, to be drawn to death at horses tails, & how *Valentine* and *Pacolei* departed secretly out of his Hoast, & went to *Angory*, and of the vision of K. *Pepin*, and how he went into the holy Land with the twelve Peers of *France*. And what happened. And how *Haufray* and *Henry* betrayed their Father K. *Pepin*, and the twelve Peers of *France*. And how Caliph of *Bendaz* made a truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*. And how *Haufray*, to further his Treason, came before *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*, and how he was intrapped in his own net. ch. 47
How *Valemine* and *Pacolei* came before the Castle, and how *Pacolei* raised up the Devil, to ask his Counsel about the taking of the Castle. And how *Brandiffer* brought the twelve Peers of *France* into his strong Castle, & imprisoned them. And how he besieged the City of *Angory*. And how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was captive in *Angory*, made means to *Valentine* to deliver him upon sufficient Ransome. ch. 48
How *Myllon Dangler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of prison, instead of King *Lucar*. And how *Valemine* and the Duke *Myllon* issued out of the City of *Angory*, and
wan

The Table.

wan the battel from the *Sarazens*. And how King *Pepin* was delivered in change for the King of *Indies* Marthal; And left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to succour his Wife: *ch. 49*

How *Valentine*, under the shape of a Physitian, went into *India* to see and speak with the fair *Clerimond*. And how *Valentine* rode away with her. And how the K. of *Brittain* was given to K. *Pepin* by treason. And how *Valentine* took the strong Castle, and delivered his Father the Emperor, and all the rest of the Prisoners. And how the Emperor, *Orson*, & the Green Knight, kept a strong Garrison in this Castle, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* compassed the death of their Father. And how the Emperor of *Greece*, *Orson*, and the Green Knight, left the Castle, and came to the succour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the Christians issued out of the City of *Angory*, and bid battel to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly slew his own Father; and how *Myllon Dangler* returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orson* into *Greece*. *ch. 50*

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how K. *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his Wife, and how he betrayed *Orson* and the Green Knight. And how *Galeran* delivered his letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made. How *Bellysant* and *Clerimond* came to know King *Hugons* treason, and how *Galeran* lost his head. And how *Orson* and the Green Knight were set free. *ch. 51*

How at the end of seven years, *Valentine* died in the Palace of *Constantinople*, and how *Orson* turned Hermet. *ch. 52*

FINIS.

A Catalogue of Books.

THE Famous History of, *The Destruction of Troy*, in Three Books: Shewing the Foundation of the City, and the First Destruction by *Hercules*: The Rebuilding and Second Destruction: The Re-Edificing by *Priamus* and *Laomedan*: The Ravishing of *Hellen*: The Worthy Actions of *Priamus* and *Hector*; And the Final Ruine of that Famous City.

The Delectable History of, *Paladine of England*.

The History of, *Amadis de Gaul*, the Fifth Part.

The Pleasant History of, *Doubellianis of Greece*.

The Excellent History of, *Gleocretan and Cloriana*.

These with Variety of other

HISTORIES, which are Convenient for **ENGLISH**, or **IRISH** Chapmen, are Printed for, and sold by, **THO. PASSINGER**, at the Three Bibles on *London-Bridge*.

21111
FINIS.

2